

1. Introduction. This is the `CWEAVE` program by Silvio Levy and Donald E. Knuth, based on `WEAVE` by Knuth. We are thankful to Steve Avery, Nelson Beebe, Hans-Hermann Bode (to whom the original C++ adaptation is due), Klaus Guntermann, Norman Ramsey, Tomas Rokicki, Joachim Schnitter, Joachim Schrod, Lee Wittenberg, Saroj Mahapatra, Cesar Augusto Rorato Crusius, and others who have contributed improvements.

The “banner line” defined here should be changed whenever `CWEAVE` is modified.

```
#define banner "This is CWEAVE (Version 3.64)\n"
```

```
  <Include files 6>
  <Preprocessor definitions>
  <Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5>
  <Typedef declarations 18>
  <Global variables 17>
  <Predeclaration of procedures 2>
```

2. We predeclare several standard system functions here instead of including their system header files, because the names of the header files are not as standard as the names of the functions. (For example, some C environments have `<string.h>` where others have `<strings.h>`.)

```
<Predeclaration of procedures 2> ≡
```

```
extern int strlen(); /* length of string */
extern int strcmp(); /* compare strings lexicographically */
extern char *strcpy(); /* copy one string to another */
extern int strncmp(); /* compare up to n string characters */
extern char *strncpy(); /* copy up to n string characters */
```

See also sections 34, 39, 55, 59, 62, 64, 74, 83, 91, 114, 181, 194, 205, 212, 221, 225, 237, and 246.

This code is used in section 1.

3. `CWEAVE` has a fairly straightforward outline. It operates in three phases: First it inputs the source file and stores cross-reference data, then it inputs the source once again and produces the `TEX` output file, finally it sorts and outputs the index.

Please read the documentation for `common`, the set of routines common to `CTANGLE` and `CWEAVE`, before proceeding further.

```
int main(ac, av)
  int ac; /* argument count */
  char **av; /* argument values */
{
  argc ← ac;
  argv ← av;
  program ← cweave;
  make_xrefs ← force_lines ← make_pb ← 1; /* controlled by command-line options */
  common_init();
  <Set initial values 20>;
  if (show_banner) printf(banner); /* print a “banner line” */
  <Store all the reserved words 28>;
  phase_one(); /* read all the user’s text and store the cross-references */
  phase_two(); /* read all the text again and translate it to TEX form */
  phase_three(); /* output the cross-reference index */
  return wrap_up(); /* and exit gracefully */
}
```

4. The following parameters were sufficient in the original `WEAVE` to handle `TeX`, so they should be sufficient for most applications of `CWEAVE`. If you change `max_bytes`, `max_names`, `hash_size`, or `buf_size` you have to change them also in the file `"common.w"`.

```
#define max_bytes 90000 /* the number of bytes in identifiers, index entries, and section names */
#define max_names 4000 /* number of identifiers, strings, section names; must be less than 10240;
    used in "common.w" */
#define max_sections 2000 /* greater than the total number of sections */
#define hash_size 353 /* should be prime */
#define buf_size 100 /* maximum length of input line, plus one */
#define longest_name 10000 /* section names and strings shouldn't be longer than this */
#define long_buf_size (buf_size + longest_name)
#define line_length 80
    /* lines of TeX output have at most this many characters; should be less than 256 */
#define max_refs 20000 /* number of cross-references; must be less than 65536 */
#define max_toks 20000 /* number of symbols in C texts being parsed; must be less than 65536 */
#define max_texts 4000 /* number of phrases in C texts being parsed; must be less than 10240 */
#define max_scraps 2000 /* number of tokens in C texts being parsed */
#define stack_size 400 /* number of simultaneous output levels */
```

5. The next few sections contain stuff from the file `"common.w"` that must be included in both `"ctangle.w"` and `"cweave.w"`. It appears in file `"common.h"`, which needs to be updated when `"common.w"` changes.

First comes general stuff:

```
#define ctangle 0
#define cweave 1
⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ ≡
    typedef short boolean;
    typedef char unsigned eight_bits;
    extern boolean program; /* CWEAVE or CTANGLE? */
    extern int phase; /* which phase are we in? */
```

See also sections 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, and 15.

This code is used in section 1.

```
6. ⟨Include files 6⟩ ≡
#include <stdio.h>
```

See also section 38.

This code is used in section 1.

7. Code related to the character set:

```

#define and_and °4 /* '&&'; corresponds to MIT's  $\wedge$  */
#define lt_lt °20 /* '<<'; corresponds to MIT's  $\subset$  */
#define gt_gt °21 /* '>>'; corresponds to MIT's  $\supset$  */
#define plus_plus °13 /* '++'; corresponds to MIT's  $\uparrow$  */
#define minus_minus °1 /* '--'; corresponds to MIT's  $\downarrow$  */
#define minus_gt °31 /* '->'; corresponds to MIT's  $\rightarrow$  */
#define not_eq °32 /* '!='; corresponds to MIT's  $\neq$  */
#define lt_eq °34 /* '<='; corresponds to MIT's  $\leq$  */
#define gt_eq °35 /* '>='; corresponds to MIT's  $\geq$  */
#define eq_eq °36 /* '=='; corresponds to MIT's  $\equiv$  */
#define or_or °37 /* '||'; corresponds to MIT's  $\vee$  */
#define dot_dot_dot °16 /* '...'; corresponds to MIT's  $\infty$  */
#define colon_colon °6 /* ':::; corresponds to MIT's  $\in$  */
#define period_ast °26 /* '.*'; corresponds to MIT's  $\otimes$  */
#define minus_gt_ast °27 /* '->*'; corresponds to MIT's  $\zeta$  */
⟨ Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5 ⟩ +≡
char section_text[longest_name + 1]; /* name being sought for */
char *section_text_end ← section_text + longest_name; /* end of section_text */
char *id_first; /* where the current identifier begins in the buffer */
char *id_loc; /* just after the current identifier in the buffer */

```

8. Code related to input routines:

```

#define xisalpha(c) (isalpha(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
#define xisdigit(c) (isdigit(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
#define xisspace(c) (isspace(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
#define xislower(c) (islower(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
#define xisupper(c) (isupper(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
#define xisxdigit(c) (isxdigit(c)  $\wedge$  ((eight_bits) c < °200))
⟨ Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5 ⟩ +≡
extern char buffer[]; /* where each line of input goes */
extern char *buffer_end; /* end of buffer */
extern char *loc; /* points to the next character to be read from the buffer */
extern char *limit; /* points to the last character in the buffer */

```

9. Code related to identifier and section name storage:

```

#define length(c) (c + 1)-byte_start - (c)-byte_start /* the length of a name */
#define print_id(c) term_write((c)-byte_start, length((c))) /* print identifier */
#define llink link /* left link in binary search tree for section names */
#define rlink dummy.Rlink /* right link in binary search tree for section names */
#define root name_dir→rlink /* the root of the binary search tree for section names */
#define chunk_marker 0

```

⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ +≡

```

typedef struct name_info {
  char *byte_start; /* beginning of the name in byte_mem */
  struct name_info *link;
  union {
    struct name_info *Rlink; /* right link in binary search tree for section names */
    char llk; /* used by identifiers in CWEAVE only */
  } dummy;
  char *equiv_or_xref; /* info corresponding to names */
} name_info; /* contains information about an identifier or section name */
typedef name_info *name_pointer; /* pointer into array of name_infos */
typedef name_pointer *hash_pointer;
extern char byte_mem[]; /* characters of names */
extern char *byte_mem_end; /* end of byte_mem */
extern name_info name_dir[]; /* information about names */
extern name_pointer name_dir_end; /* end of name_dir */
extern name_pointer name_ptr; /* first unused position in byte_start */
extern char *byte_ptr; /* first unused position in byte_mem */
extern name_pointer hash[]; /* heads of hash lists */
extern hash_pointer hash_end; /* end of hash */
extern hash_pointer h; /* index into hash-head array */
extern name_pointer id_lookup(); /* looks up a string in the identifier table */
extern name_pointer section_lookup(); /* finds section name */
extern void print_section_name(), sprint_section_name();

```

10. Code related to error handling:

```

#define spotless 0 /* history value for normal jobs */
#define harmless_message 1 /* history value when non-serious info was printed */
#define error_message 2 /* history value when an error was noted */
#define fatal_message 3 /* history value when we had to stop prematurely */
#define mark_harmless
  {
    if (history ≡ spotless) history ← harmless_message;
  }
#define mark_error history ← error_message
#define confusion(s) fatal("!␣This␣can't␣happen:␣", s)

```

⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ +≡

```

extern history; /* indicates how bad this run was */
extern err_print(); /* print error message and context */
extern wrap_up(); /* indicate history and exit */
extern void fatal(); /* issue error message and die */
extern void overflow(); /* succumb because a table has overflowed */

```

11. Code related to file handling:

```

format line x /* make line an unreserved word */
#define max_file_name_length 60
#define cur_file file[include_depth] /* current file */
#define cur_file_name file_name[include_depth] /* current file name */
#define web_file_name file_name[0] /* main source file name */
#define cur_line line[include_depth] /* number of current line in current file */
⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ +≡
extern include_depth; /* current level of nesting */
extern FILE *file[]; /* stack of non-change files */
extern FILE *change_file; /* change file */
extern char C_file_name[]; /* name of C_file */
extern char tex_file_name[]; /* name of tex_file */
extern char idx_file_name[]; /* name of idx_file */
extern char scn_file_name[]; /* name of scn_file */
extern char file_name[][max_file_name_length]; /* stack of non-change file names */
extern char change_file_name[]; /* name of change file */
extern line[]; /* number of current line in the stacked files */
extern change_line; /* number of current line in change file */
extern boolean input_has_ended; /* if there is no more input */
extern boolean changing; /* if the current line is from change_file */
extern boolean web_file_open; /* if the web file is being read */
extern reset_input(); /* initialize to read the web file and change file */
extern get_line(); /* inputs the next line */
extern check_complete(); /* checks that all changes were picked up */

```

12. Code related to section numbers:

```

⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ +≡
typedef unsigned short sixteen_bits;
extern sixteen_bits section_count; /* the current section number */
extern boolean changed_section[]; /* is the section changed? */
extern boolean change_pending; /* is a decision about change still unclear? */
extern boolean print_where; /* tells CTANGLE to print line and file info */

```

13. Code related to command line arguments:

```

#define show_banner flags['b'] /* should the banner line be printed? */
#define show_progress flags['p'] /* should progress reports be printed? */
#define show_happiness flags['h'] /* should lack of errors be announced? */
⟨Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5⟩ +≡
extern int argc; /* copy of ac parameter to main */
extern char **argv; /* copy of av parameter to main */
extern boolean flags[]; /* an option for each 7-bit code */

```

14. Code relating to output:

```
#define update_terminal fflush(stdout) /* empty the terminal output buffer */
#define new_line putchar('\n')
#define putxchar putchar
#define term_write(a,b) fflush(stdout), fwrite(a, sizeof(char), b, stdout)
#define C_printf(c,a) fprintf(C_file, c, a)
#define C_putc(c) putc(c, C_file)
```

⟨ Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5 ⟩ +≡

```
extern FILE *C_file; /* where output of CTANGLE goes */
extern FILE *tex_file; /* where output of CWEAVE goes */
extern FILE *idx_file; /* where index from CWEAVE goes */
extern FILE *scn_file; /* where list of sections from CWEAVE goes */
extern FILE *active_file; /* currently active file for CWEAVE output */
```

15. The procedure that gets everything rolling:

⟨ Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5 ⟩ +≡

```
extern void common_init();
```

16. Data structures exclusive to CWEAVE. As explained in `common.w`, the field of a `name.info` structure that contains the `rlink` of a section name is used for a completely different purpose in the case of identifiers. It is then called the *ilk* of the identifier, and it is used to distinguish between various types of identifiers, as follows:

normal and *func.template* identifiers are part of the C program that will appear in italic type (or in typewriter type if all uppercase).

custom identifiers are part of the C program that will be typeset in special ways.

roman identifiers are index entries that appear after `@^` in the `CWEB` file.

wildcard identifiers are index entries that appear after `@:` in the `CWEB` file.

typewriter identifiers are index entries that appear after `@.` in the `CWEB` file.

alfop, ..., *template_like* identifiers are C or C++ reserved words whose *ilk* explains how they are to be treated when C code is being formatted.

```
#define ilk dummy.ilk
#define normal 0 /* ordinary identifiers have normal ilk */
#define roman 1 /* normal index entries have roman ilk */
#define wildcard 2 /* user-formatted index entries have wildcard ilk */
#define typewriter 3 /* 'typewriter type' entries have typewriter ilk */
#define abnormal(a) (a-ilk > typewriter) /* tells if a name is special */
#define func_template 4 /* identifiers that can be followed by optional template */
#define custom 5 /* identifiers with user-given control sequence */
#define alfop 22 /* alphabetic operators like and or not_eq */
#define else_like 26 /* else */
#define public_like 40 /* public, private, protected */
#define operator_like 41 /* operator */
#define new_like 42 /* new */
#define catch_like 43 /* catch */
#define for_like 45 /* for, switch, while */
#define do_like 46 /* do */
#define if_like 47 /* if, ifdef, endif, pragma, ... */
#define delete_like 48 /* delete */
#define raw_ubin 49 /* '&' or '*' when looking for const following */
#define const_like 50 /* const, volatile */
#define raw_int 51 /* int, char, ...; also structure and class names */
#define int_like 52 /* same, when not followed by left parenthesis or :: */
#define case_like 53 /* case, return, goto, break, continue */
#define sizeof_like 54 /* sizeof */
#define struct_like 55 /* struct, union, enum, class */
#define typedef_like 56 /* typedef */
#define define_like 57 /* define */
#define template_like 58 /* template */
```

17. We keep track of the current section number in `section_count`, which is the total number of sections that have started. Sections which have been altered by a change file entry have their `changed_section` flag turned on during the first phase.

⟨Global variables 17⟩ ≡

```
boolean change_exists; /* has any section changed? */
```

See also sections 19, 25, 31, 37, 41, 43, 58, 68, 73, 77, 97, 104, 108, 168, 187, 191, 207, 216, 227, 229, 233, 235, and 244.

This code is used in section 1.

18. The other large memory area in **CWEAVE** keeps the cross-reference data. All uses of the name p are recorded in a linked list beginning at $p\text{-xref}$, which points into the $xmem$ array. The elements of $xmem$ are structures consisting of an integer, num , and a pointer $xlink$ to another element of $xmem$. If $x \leftarrow p\text{-xref}$ is a pointer into $xmem$, the value of $x\text{-num}$ is either a section number where p is used, or $cite_flag$ plus a section number where p is mentioned, or def_flag plus a section number where p is defined; and $x\text{-xlink}$ points to the next such cross-reference for p , if any. This list of cross-references is in decreasing order by section number. The next unused slot in $xmem$ is $xref_ptr$. The linked list ends at $\&xmem[0]$.

The global variable $xref_switch$ is set either to def_flag or to zero, depending on whether the next cross-reference to an identifier is to be underlined or not in the index. This switch is set to def_flag when $\textcircled{!}$ or \textcircled{d} is scanned, and it is cleared to zero when the next identifier or index entry cross-reference has been made. Similarly, the global variable $section_xref_switch$ is either def_flag or $cite_flag$ or zero, depending on whether a section name is being defined, cited or used in C text.

```
<Typedef declarations 18> ≡
typedef struct xref_info {
    sixteen_bits num; /* section number plus zero or def_flag */
    struct xref_info *xlink; /* pointer to the previous cross-reference */
} xref_info;
typedef xref_info *xref_pointer;
```

See also sections 24, 103, and 186.

This code is used in section 1.

```
19. <Global variables 17> +≡
xref_info xmem[max_refs]; /* contains cross-reference information */
xref_pointer xmem_end ← xmem + max_refs - 1;
xref_pointer xref_ptr; /* the largest occupied position in xmem */
sixteen_bits xref_switch, section_xref_switch; /* either zero or def_flag */
```

20. A section that is used for multi-file output (with the \textcircled{c} feature) has a special first cross-reference whose num field is $file_flag$.

```
#define file_flag (3 * cite_flag)
#define def_flag (2 * cite_flag)
#define cite_flag 10240 /* must be strictly larger than max_sections */
#define xref equiv_or_xref
```

```
<Set initial values 20> ≡
xref_ptr ← xmem;
name_dir_xref ← (char *) xmem;
xref_switch ← 0;
section_xref_switch ← 0;
xmem_num ← 0; /* sentinel value */
```

See also sections 26, 32, 52, 80, 82, 98, 105, 188, 234, and 236.

This code is used in section 3.

21. A new cross-reference for an identifier is formed by calling *new_xref*, which discards duplicate entries and ignores non-underlined references to one-letter identifiers or C's reserved words.

If the user has sent the *no_xref* flag (the *-x* option of the command line), it is unnecessary to keep track of cross-references for identifiers. If one were careful, one could probably make more changes around section 100 to avoid a lot of identifier looking up.

```

#define append_xref(c)
    if (xref_ptr  $\equiv$  xmem_end) overflow("cross-reference");
    else (++xref_ptr)-num  $\leftarrow$  c;
#define no_xref (flags['x']  $\equiv$  0)
#define make_xrefs flags['x'] /* should cross references be output? */
#define is_tiny(p) ((p+1)-byte_start  $\equiv$  (p)-byte_start + 1)
#define unindexed(a) (a < res_wd_end  $\wedge$  a-ilk  $\geq$  custom)
    /* tells if uses of a name are to be indexed */

void new_xref(p)
    name_pointer p;
{
    xref_pointer q; /* pointer to previous cross-reference */
    sixteen_bits m, n; /* new and previous cross-reference value */
    if (no_xref) return;
    if ((unindexed(p)  $\vee$  is_tiny(p))  $\wedge$  xref_switch  $\equiv$  0) return;
    m  $\leftarrow$  section_count + xref_switch;
    xref_switch  $\leftarrow$  0;
    q  $\leftarrow$  (xref_pointer) p-xref;
    if (q  $\neq$  xmem) {
        n  $\leftarrow$  q-num;
        if (n  $\equiv$  m  $\vee$  n  $\equiv$  m + def_flag) return;
        else if (m  $\equiv$  n + def_flag) {
            q-num  $\leftarrow$  m;
            return;
        }
    }
}
append_xref(m);
xref_ptr-xlink  $\leftarrow$  q;
p-xref  $\leftarrow$  (char *) xref_ptr;
}

```

22. The cross-reference lists for section names are slightly different. Suppose that a section name is defined in sections m_1, \dots, m_k , cited in sections n_1, \dots, n_l , and used in sections p_1, \dots, p_j . Then its list will contain $m_1 + \text{def_flag}, \dots, m_k + \text{def_flag}, n_1 + \text{cite_flag}, \dots, n_l + \text{cite_flag}, p_1, \dots, p_j$, in this order.

Although this method of storage takes quadratic time with respect to the length of the list, under foreseeable uses of CWEAVE this inefficiency is insignificant.

```

void new_section_xref(p)
    name_pointer p;
{
    xref_pointer q, r;    /* pointers to previous cross-references */
    q ← (xref_pointer) p→xref;
    r ← xmem;
    if (q > xmem)
        while (q→num > section_xref_switch) {
            r ← q;
            q ← q→xlink;
        }
    if (r→num ≡ section_count + section_xref_switch) return;    /* don't duplicate entries */
    append_xref(section_count + section_xref_switch);
    xref_ptr→xlink ← q;
    section_xref_switch ← 0;
    if (r ≡ xmem) p→xref ← (char *) xref_ptr;
    else r→xlink ← xref_ptr;
}

```

23. The cross-reference list for a section name may also begin with *file_flag*. Here's how that flag gets put in.

```

void set_file_flag(p)
    name_pointer p;
{
    xref_pointer q;
    q ← (xref_pointer) p→xref;
    if (q→num ≡ file_flag) return;
    append_xref(file_flag);
    xref_ptr→xlink ← q;
    p→xref ← (char *) xref_ptr;
}

```

24. A third large area of memory is used for sixteen-bit ‘tokens’, which appear in short lists similar to the strings of characters in *byte_mem*. Token lists are used to contain the result of C code translated into T_EX form; further details about them will be explained later. A *text_pointer* variable is an index into *tok_start*.

```

⟨ Typedef declarations 18 ⟩ +≡
typedef sixteen_bits token;
typedef token *token_pointer;
typedef token_pointer *text_pointer;

```

25. The first position of *tok_mem* that is unoccupied by replacement text is called *tok_ptr*, and the first unused location of *tok_start* is called *text_ptr*. Thus, we usually have $*text_ptr \equiv tok_ptr$.

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡

```

token tok_mem[max_toks];    /* tokens */
token_pointer tok_mem_end ← tok_mem + max_toks - 1;    /* end of tok_mem */
token_pointer tok_start[max_texts];    /* directory into tok_mem */
token_pointer tok_ptr;    /* first unused position in tok_mem */
text_pointer text_ptr;    /* first unused position in tok_start */
text_pointer tok_start_end ← tok_start + max_texts - 1;    /* end of tok_start */
token_pointer max_tok_ptr;    /* largest value of tok_ptr */
text_pointer max_text_ptr;    /* largest value of text_ptr */

```

26. ⟨Set initial values 20⟩ +≡

```

tok_ptr ← tok_mem + 1;
text_ptr ← tok_start + 1;
tok_start[0] ← tok_mem + 1;
tok_start[1] ← tok_mem + 1;
max_tok_ptr ← tok_mem + 1;
max_text_ptr ← tok_start + 1;

```

27. Here are the three procedures needed to complete *id_lookup*:

```

int names_match(p, first, l, t)
    name_pointer p;    /* points to the proposed match */
    char *first;    /* position of first character of string */
    int l;    /* length of identifier */
    eight_bits t;    /* desired ilk */
{
    if (length(p) ≠ l) return 0;
    if (p-ilk ≠ t ∧ ¬(t ≡ normal ∧ abnormal(p))) return 0;
    return ¬strcmp(first, p-byte_start, l);
}

void init_p(p, t)
    name_pointer p;
    eight_bits t;
{
    p-ilk ← t;
    p-xref ← (char *) xmem;
}

void init_node(p)
    name_pointer p;
{
    p-xref ← (char *) xmem;
}

```

28. We have to get C's reserved words into the hash table, and the simplest way to do this is to insert them every time `CWEAVE` is run. Fortunately there are relatively few reserved words. (Some of these are not strictly "reserved," but are defined in header files of the ISO Standard C Library.)

```

⟨Store all the reserved words 28⟩ ≡
  id_lookup("and", Λ, alfop);
  id_lookup("and_eq", Λ, alfop);
  id_lookup("asm", Λ, sizeof_like);
  id_lookup("auto", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("bitand", Λ, alfop);
  id_lookup("bitor", Λ, alfop);
  id_lookup("bool", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("break", Λ, case_like);
  id_lookup("case", Λ, case_like);
  id_lookup("catch", Λ, catch_like);
  id_lookup("char", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("class", Λ, struct_like);
  id_lookup("clock_t", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("compl", Λ, alfop);
  id_lookup("const", Λ, const_like);
  id_lookup("const_cast", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("continue", Λ, case_like);
  id_lookup("default", Λ, case_like);
  id_lookup("define", Λ, define_like);
  id_lookup("defined", Λ, sizeof_like);
  id_lookup("delete", Λ, delete_like);
  id_lookup("div_t", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("do", Λ, do_like);
  id_lookup("double", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("dynamic_cast", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("elif", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("else", Λ, else_like);
  id_lookup("endif", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("enum", Λ, struct_like);
  id_lookup("error", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("explicit", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("export", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("extern", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("FILE", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("float", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("for", Λ, for_like);
  id_lookup("fpos_t", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("friend", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("goto", Λ, case_like);
  id_lookup("if", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("ifdef", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("ifndef", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("include", Λ, if_like);
  id_lookup("inline", Λ, int_like);
  id_lookup("int", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("jmp_buf", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("ldiv_t", Λ, raw_int);
  id_lookup("line", Λ, if_like);

```

```

id_lookup("long",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("mutable",  $\Lambda$ , int_like);
id_lookup("namespace",  $\Lambda$ , struct_like);
id_lookup("new",  $\Lambda$ , new_like);
id_lookup("not",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
id_lookup("not_eq",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
id_lookup("NULL",  $\Lambda$ , custom);
id_lookup("offsetof",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("operator",  $\Lambda$ , operator_like);
id_lookup("or",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
id_lookup("or_eq",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
id_lookup("pragma",  $\Lambda$ , if_like);
id_lookup("private",  $\Lambda$ , public_like);
id_lookup("protected",  $\Lambda$ , public_like);
id_lookup("ptrdiff_t",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("public",  $\Lambda$ , public_like);
id_lookup("register",  $\Lambda$ , int_like);
id_lookup("reinterpret_cast",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("return",  $\Lambda$ , case_like);
id_lookup("short",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("sig_atomic_t",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("signed",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("size_t",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("sizeof",  $\Lambda$ , sizeof_like);
id_lookup("static",  $\Lambda$ , int_like);
id_lookup("static_cast",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("struct",  $\Lambda$ , struct_like);
id_lookup("switch",  $\Lambda$ , for_like);
id_lookup("template",  $\Lambda$ , template_like);
id_lookup("this",  $\Lambda$ , custom);
id_lookup("throw",  $\Lambda$ , case_like);
id_lookup("time_t",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("try",  $\Lambda$ , else_like);
id_lookup("typedef",  $\Lambda$ , typedef_like);
id_lookup("typeid",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("typename",  $\Lambda$ , struct_like);
id_lookup("undef",  $\Lambda$ , if_like);
id_lookup("union",  $\Lambda$ , struct_like);
id_lookup("unsigned",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("using",  $\Lambda$ , int_like);
id_lookup("va_dcl",  $\Lambda$ , decl); /* Berkeley's variable-arg-list convention */
id_lookup("va_list",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int); /* ditto */
id_lookup("virtual",  $\Lambda$ , int_like);
id_lookup("void",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("volatile",  $\Lambda$ , const_like);
id_lookup("wchar_t",  $\Lambda$ , raw_int);
id_lookup("while",  $\Lambda$ , for_like);
id_lookup("xor",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
id_lookup("xor_eq",  $\Lambda$ , alfop);
res_wd_end  $\leftarrow$  name_ptr;
id_lookup("TeX",  $\Lambda$ , custom);
id_lookup("make_pair",  $\Lambda$ , func_template);

```

This code is used in section 3.

29. Lexical scanning. Let us now consider the subroutines that read the `CWEB` source file and break it into meaningful units. There are four such procedures: One simply skips to the next `@_` or `@*` that begins a section; another passes over the `TeX` text at the beginning of a section; the third passes over the `TeX` text in a C comment; and the last, which is the most interesting, gets the next token of a C text. They all use the pointers *limit* and *loc* into the line of input currently being studied.

30. Control codes in `CWEB`, which begin with `@`, are converted into a numeric code designed to simplify `CWEAVE`'s logic; for example, larger numbers are given to the control codes that denote more significant milestones, and the code of *new_section* should be the largest of all. Some of these numeric control codes take the place of `char` control codes that will not otherwise appear in the output of the scanning routines.

```
#define ignore °0 /* control code of no interest to CWEAVE */
#define verbatim °2 /* takes the place of extended ASCII α */
#define begin_short_comment °3 /* C++ short comment */
#define begin_comment '\t' /* tab marks will not appear */
#define underline '\n' /* this code will be intercepted without confusion */
#define noop °177 /* takes the place of ASCII delete */
#define xref_roman °203 /* control code for '@^' */
#define xref_wildcard °204 /* control code for '@:' */
#define xref_typewriter °205 /* control code for '@.' */
#define TeX_string °206 /* control code for '@t' */
  format TeX_string TeX
#define ord °207 /* control code for '@' */
#define join °210 /* control code for '@&' */
#define thin_space °211 /* control code for '@,' */
#define math_break °212 /* control code for '@|' */
#define line_break °213 /* control code for '@/' */
#define big_line_break °214 /* control code for '@#' */
#define no_line_break °215 /* control code for '@+' */
#define pseudo_semi °216 /* control code for '@;' */
#define macro_arg_open °220 /* control code for '@[' */
#define macro_arg_close °221 /* control code for '@]' */
#define trace °222 /* control code for '@0', '@1' and '@2' */
#define translit_code °223 /* control code for '@1' */
#define output_defs_code °224 /* control code for '@h' */
#define format_code °225 /* control code for '@f' and '@s' */
#define definition °226 /* control code for '@d' */
#define begin_C °227 /* control code for '@c' */
#define section_name °230 /* control code for '@<' */
#define new_section °231 /* control code for '@_ ' and '@*' */
```

31. Control codes are converted to `CWEAVE`'s internal representation by means of the table *ccode*.

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡

```
  eight_bits ccode[256]; /* meaning of a char following @ */
```

32. \langle Set initial values 20 $\rangle + \equiv$

```

{
  int c;
  for (c ← 0; c < 256; c++) ccode[c] ← 0;
}
ccode['␣'] ← ccode['\t'] ← ccode['\n'] ← ccode['\v'] ← ccode['\r'] ← ccode['\f'] ← ccode['*'] ←
  new_section;
ccode['@'] ← '@'; /* 'quoted' at sign */
ccode['='] ← verbatim;
ccode['d'] ← ccode['D'] ← definition;
ccode['f'] ← ccode['F'] ← ccode['s'] ← ccode['S'] ← format_code;
ccode['c'] ← ccode['C'] ← ccode['p'] ← ccode['P'] ← begin_C;
ccode['t'] ← ccode['T'] ← TEX_string;
ccode['l'] ← ccode['L'] ← translit_code;
ccode['q'] ← ccode['Q'] ← noop;
ccode['h'] ← ccode['H'] ← output_defs_code;
ccode['&'] ← join;
ccode['<'] ← ccode['('] ← section_name;
ccode['!'] ← underline;
ccode['^'] ← xref_roman;
ccode[':'] ← xref_wildcard;
ccode['.'] ← xref_typewriter;
ccode[' ,'] ← thin_space;
ccode['|'] ← math_break;
ccode['/'] ← line_break;
ccode['#'] ← big_line_break;
ccode['+'] ← no_line_break;
ccode[';'] ← pseudo_semi;
ccode['['] ← macro_arg_open;
ccode[']'] ← macro_arg_close;
ccode['\'] ← ord;

```

\langle Special control codes for debugging 33 \rangle

33. Users can write @2, @1, and @0 to turn tracing fully on, partly on, and off, respectively.

\langle Special control codes for debugging 33 $\rangle \equiv$
 ccode['0'] ← ccode['1'] ← ccode['2'] ← trace;

This code is used in section 32.

34. The *skip_limbo* routine is used on the first pass to skip through portions of the input that are not in any sections, i.e., that precede the first section. After this procedure has been called, the value of *input_has_ended* will tell whether or not a section has actually been found.

There's a complication that we will postpone until later: If the @s operation appears in limbo, we want to use it to adjust the default interpretation of identifiers.

\langle Predeclaration of procedures 2 $\rangle + \equiv$
 void skip_limbo();


```

35. void skip_limbo()
{
  while (1) {
    if (loc > limit & get_line() == 0) return;
    *(limit + 1) ← '@';
    while (*loc ≠ '@') loc++; /* look for '@', then skip two chars */
    if (loc++ ≤ limit) {
      int c ← ccode[(eight_bits) *loc++];
      if (c == new_section) return;
      if (c == noop) skip_restricted();
      else if (c == format_code) ⟨Process simple format in limbo 71⟩;
    }
  }
}

```

36. The `skip_TEX` routine is used on the first pass to skip through the T_EX code at the beginning of a section. It returns the next control code or '|' found in the input. A `new_section` is assumed to exist at the very end of the file.

```

format skip_TeX TeX
unsigned skip_TEX() /* skip past pure TEX code */
{
  while (1) {
    if (loc > limit & get_line() == 0) return (new_section);
    *(limit + 1) ← '@';
    while (*loc ≠ '@' & *loc ≠ '|') loc++;
    if (*loc++ == '|') return ('|');
    if (loc ≤ limit) return (ccode[(eight_bits) *(loc++)]);
  }
}

```

37. Inputting the next token. As stated above, `CWEAVE`'s most interesting lexical scanning routine is the `get_next` function that inputs the next token of C input. However, `get_next` is not especially complicated.

The result of `get_next` is either a `char` code for some special character, or it is a special code representing a pair of characters (e.g., `'!='`), or it is the numeric value computed by the `ccode` table, or it is one of the following special codes:

identifier: In this case the global variables `id_first` and `id_loc` will have been set to the beginning and ending-plus-one locations in the buffer, as required by the `id_lookup` routine.

string: The string will have been copied into the array `section_text`; `id_first` and `id_loc` are set as above (now they are pointers into `section_text`).

constant: The constant is copied into `section_text`, with slight modifications; `id_first` and `id_loc` are set.

Furthermore, some of the control codes cause `get_next` to take additional actions:

xref_roman, *xref_wildcard*, *xref_typewriter*, *TEX_string*, *verbatim*: The values of `id_first` and `id_loc` will have been set to the beginning and ending-plus-one locations in the buffer.

section_name: In this case the global variable `cur_section` will point to the `byte_start` entry for the section name that has just been scanned. The value of `cur_section_char` will be `'(` if the section name was preceded by `@(` instead of `@<`.

If `get_next` sees `'@!'` it sets `xref_switch` to `def_flag` and goes on to the next token.

```
#define constant °200 /* C constant */
#define string °201 /* C string */
#define identifier °202 /* C identifier or reserved word */
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  name_pointer cur_section; /* name of section just scanned */
  char cur_section_char; /* the character just before that name */
```

38. ⟨Include files 6⟩ +=

```
#include <ctype.h> /* definition of isalpha, isdigit and so on */
#include <stdlib.h> /* definition of exit */
```

39. As one might expect, `get_next` consists mostly of a big switch that branches to the various special cases that can arise. C allows underscores to appear in identifiers, and some C compilers even allow the dollar sign.

```
#define isxalpha(c) ((c) ≡ '_' ∨ (c) ≡ '$') /* non-alpha characters allowed in identifier */
#define ishigh(c) ((eight_bits)(c) > °177)
⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +=
  eight_bits get_next();
```

```

40. eight_bits get_next() /* produces the next input token */
{ eight_bits c; /* the current character */
  while (1) {
    ⟨Check if we're at the end of a preprocessor command 45⟩;
    if (loc > limit ∧ get_line() ≡ 0) return (new_section);
    c ← *(loc++);
    if (xisdigit(c) ∨ c ≡ '.' ) ⟨Get a constant 48⟩
    else if (c ≡ '\\'' ∨ c ≡ '\"' ∨ (c ≡ 'L' ∧ (*loc ≡ '\\'' ∨ *loc ≡ '\"'))
      ∨ (c ≡ '<' ∧ sharp_include_line ≡ 1)) ⟨Get a string 49⟩
    else if (xisalpha(c) ∨ isxalpha(c) ∨ ishigh(c)) ⟨Get an identifier 47⟩
    else if (c ≡ '@') ⟨Get control code and possible section name 50⟩
    else if (xisspace(c)) continue; /* ignore spaces and tabs */
    if (c ≡ '#' ∧ loc ≡ buffer + 1) ⟨Raise preprocessor flag 42⟩;
    mistake: ⟨Compress two-symbol operator 46⟩
    return (c);
  }
}

```

41. Because preprocessor commands do not fit in with the rest of the syntax of C, we have to deal with them separately. One solution is to enclose such commands between special markers. Thus, when a # is seen as the first character of a line, *get_next* returns a special code *left_preproc* and raises a flag *preprocessing*.

We can use the same internal code number for *left_preproc* as we do for *ord*, since *get_next* changes *ord* into a string.

```

#define left_preproc ord /* begins a preprocessor command */
#define right_preproc °217 /* ends a preprocessor command */
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  boolean preprocessing ← 0; /* are we scanning a preprocessor command? */

```

```

42. ⟨Raise preprocessor flag 42⟩ ≡
{
  preprocessing ← 1;
  ⟨Check if next token is include 44⟩;
  return (left_preproc);
}

```

This code is used in section 40.

43. An additional complication is the freakish use of < and > to delimit a file name in lines that start with **#include**. We must treat this file name as a string.

```

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  boolean sharp_include_line ← 0; /* are we scanning a # include line? */

```

```

44. ⟨Check if next token is include 44⟩ ≡
  while (loc ≤ buffer_end - 7 ∧ xisspace(*loc)) loc++;
  if (loc ≤ buffer_end - 6 ∧ strncmp(loc, "include", 7) ≡ 0) sharp_include_line ← 1;

```

This code is used in section 42.

45. When we get to the end of a preprocessor line, we lower the flag and send a code *right_preproc*, unless the last character was a `\`.

```

⟨ Check if we're at the end of a preprocessor command 45 ⟩ ≡
  while (loc ≡ limit - 1 ∧ preprocessing ∧ *loc ≡ '\\')
    if (get_line() ≡ 0) return (new_section); /* still in preprocessor mode */
  if (loc ≥ limit ∧ preprocessing) {
    preprocessing ← sharp_include_line ← 0;
    return (right_preproc);
  }

```

This code is used in section 40.

46. The following code assigns values to the combinations ++, --, ->, >=, <=, ==, <<, >>, !=, ||, and &&, and to the C++ combinations ..., ::, .* and ->*. The compound assignment operators (e.g., +=) are treated as separate tokens.

```
#define compress(c) if (loc++ ≤ limit) return (c)
```

⟨Compress two-symbol operator 46⟩ ≡

```
switch (c) {
case '/' :
    if (*loc ≡ '*') {
        compress(begin_comment);
    }
    else if (*loc ≡ '/') compress(begin_short_comment);
    break;
case '+' :
    if (*loc ≡ '+') compress(plus_plus);
    break;
case '-' :
    if (*loc ≡ '-') {
        compress(minus_minus);
    }
    else if (*loc ≡ '>')
        if *(loc + 1) ≡ '*') {
            loc++;
            compress(minus_gt_ast);
        }
        else compress(minus_gt);
    break;
case '.' :
    if (*loc ≡ '*') {
        compress(period_ast);
    }
    else if (*loc ≡ '.' ^ *(loc + 1) ≡ '.') {
        loc++;
        compress(dot_dot_dot);
    }
    break;
case ':' :
    if (*loc ≡ ':') compress(colon_colon);
    break;
case '=' :
    if (*loc ≡ '=') compress(eq_eq);
    break;
case '>' :
    if (*loc ≡ '=') {
        compress(gt_eq);
    }
    else if (*loc ≡ '>') compress(gt_gt);
    break;
case '<' :
    if (*loc ≡ '=') {
        compress(lt_eq);
    }
    else if (*loc ≡ '<') compress(lt_lt);
```

```
    break;
case '&':
    if (*loc ≡ '&') compress(and_and);
    break;
case '|':
    if (*loc ≡ '|') compress(or_or);
    break;
case '!':
    if (*loc ≡ '=') compress(not_eq);
    break;
}
```

This code is used in section 40.

```
47. ⟨Get an identifier 47⟩ ≡
{
    id_first ← --loc;
    while (isalpha(*++loc) ∨ isdigit(*loc) ∨ isxalpha(*loc) ∨ ishigh(*loc)) ;
    id_loc ← loc;
    return (identifier);
}
```

This code is used in section 40.

48. Different conventions are followed by \TeX and C to express octal and hexadecimal numbers; it is reasonable to stick to each convention within its realm. Thus the C part of a **CWEB** file has octals introduced by 0 and hexadecimals by 0x, but **CWEAVE** will print with \TeX macros that the user can redefine to fit the context. In order to simplify such macros, we replace some of the characters.

Notice that in this section and the next, *id_first* and *id_loc* are pointers into the array *section_text*, not into *buffer*.

```

⟨Get a constant 48⟩ ≡
{
  id_first ← id_loc ← section_text + 1;
  if (*(loc - 1) ≡ '0') {
    if (*loc ≡ 'x' ∨ *loc ≡ 'X') {
      *id_loc++ ← '^';
      loc++;
      while (xisxdigit(*loc)) *id_loc++ ← *loc++;
    } /* hex constant */
    else if (xisdigit(*loc)) {
      *id_loc++ ← '~';
      while (xisdigit(*loc)) *id_loc++ ← *loc++;
    } /* octal constant */
    else goto dec; /* decimal constant */
  }
  else { /* decimal constant */
    if (*(loc - 1) ≡ '.' ∧ ¬xisdigit(*loc)) goto mistake; /* not a constant */
    dec: *id_loc++ ← *(loc - 1);
    while (xisdigit(*loc) ∨ *loc ≡ '.') *id_loc++ ← *loc++;
    if (*loc ≡ 'e' ∨ *loc ≡ 'E') { /* float constant */
      *id_loc++ ← '_';
      loc++;
      if (*loc ≡ '+' ∨ *loc ≡ '-') *id_loc++ ← *loc++;
      while (xisdigit(*loc)) *id_loc++ ← *loc++;
    }
  }
  while (*loc ≡ 'u' ∨ *loc ≡ 'U' ∨ *loc ≡ 'l' ∨ *loc ≡ 'L' ∨ *loc ≡ 'f' ∨ *loc ≡ 'F') {
    *id_loc++ ← '$';
    *id_loc++ ← toupper(*loc);
    loc++;
  }
  return (constant);
}

```

This code is used in section 40.

49. C strings and character constants, delimited by double and single quotes, respectively, can contain newlines or instances of their own delimiters if they are protected by a backslash. We follow this convention, but do not allow the string to be longer than *longest_name*.

```

⟨Get a string 49⟩ ≡
{
  char delim ← c;    /* what started the string */
  id_first ← section_text + 1;
  id_loc ← section_text;
  if (delim ≡ '\'' ^ *(loc - 2) ≡ '@') {
    *++id_loc ← '@';
    *++id_loc ← '@';
  }
  *++id_loc ← delim;
  if (delim ≡ 'L') { /* wide character constant */
    delim ← *loc++;
    *++id_loc ← delim;
  }
  if (delim ≡ '<') delim ← '>'; /* for file names in # include lines */
  while (1) {
    if (loc ≥ limit) {
      if (*(limit - 1) ≠ '\\') {
        err_print("!String_didn't_end");
        loc ← limit;
        break;
      }
      if (get_line() ≡ 0) {
        err_print("!Input_ended_in_middle_of_string");
        loc ← buffer;
        break;
      }
    }
    if ((c ← *loc++) ≡ delim) {
      if (++id_loc ≤ section_text_end) *id_loc ← c;
      break;
    }
    if (c ≡ '\\')
      if (loc ≥ limit) continue;
      else if (++id_loc ≤ section_text_end) {
        *id_loc ← '\\';
        c ← *loc++;
      }
    if (++id_loc ≤ section_text_end) *id_loc ← c;
  }
  if (id_loc ≥ section_text_end) {
    printf("\n!String_too_long:");
    term_write(section_text + 1, 25);
    printf("...");
    mark_error;
  }
  id_loc++;
  return (string);
}

```


This code is used in sections 40 and 50.

50. After an @ sign has been scanned, the next character tells us whether there is more work to do.

```

⟨Get control code and possible section name 50⟩ ≡
{
  c ← *loc++;
  switch (ccode[(eight_bits) c]) {
  case translit_code: err_print("! Use @l in limbo only");
    continue;
  case underline: xref_switch ← def_flag;
    continue;
  case trace: tracing ← c - '0';
    continue;
  case xref_roman: case xref_wildcard: case xref_typewriter: case noop: case TEX_string:
    c ← ccode[c];
    skip_restricted();
    return (c);
  case section_name: ⟨Scan the section name and make cur_section point to it 51⟩;
  case verbatim: ⟨Scan a verbatim string 57⟩;
  case ord: ⟨Get a string 49⟩;
  default: return (ccode[(eight_bits) c]);
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 40.

51. The occurrence of a section name sets *xref_switch* to zero, because the section name might (for example) follow **int**.

```

⟨Scan the section name and make cur_section point to it 51⟩ ≡
{
  char *k; /* pointer into section_text */
  cur_section_char ← *(loc - 1);
  ⟨Put section name into section_text 53⟩;
  if (k - section_text > 3 ∧ strcmp(k - 2, "...", 3) ≡ 0)
    cur_section ← section_lookup(section_text + 1, k - 3, 1); /* 1 indicates a prefix */
  else cur_section ← section_lookup(section_text + 1, k, 0);
  xref_switch ← 0;
  return (section_name);
}

```

This code is used in section 50.

52. Section names are placed into the *section_text* array with consecutive spaces, tabs, and carriage-returns replaced by single spaces. There will be no spaces at the beginning or the end. (We set *section_text*[0] ← '␣' to facilitate this, since the *section_lookup* routine uses *section_text*[1] as the first character of the name.)

```

⟨Set initial values 20⟩ +≡
  section_text[0] ← '␣';

```

```

53.  ⟨Put section name into section_text 53⟩ ≡
    k ← section_text;
    while (1) {
        if (loc > limit ∧ get_line() ≡ 0) {
            err_print("!_Input_ended_in_section_name");
            loc ← buffer + 1;
            break;
        }
        c ← *loc;
        ⟨If end of name or erroneous control code, break 54⟩;
        loc++;
        if (k < section_text_end) k++;
        if (xisspace(c)) {
            c ← ' ';
            if (*(k - 1) ≡ ' ') k--;
        }
        *k ← c;
    }
    if (k ≥ section_text_end) {
        printf("_n!_Section_name_too_long:_");
        term_write(section_text + 1, 25);
        printf("...");
        mark_harmless;
    }
    if (*k ≡ ' ' ∧ k > section_text) k--;

```

This code is used in section 51.

```

54.  ⟨If end of name or erroneous control code, break 54⟩ ≡
    if (c ≡ '@') {
        c ← *(loc + 1);
        if (c ≡ '>') {
            loc += 2;
            break;
        }
        if (ccode[(eight_bits) c] ≡ new_section) {
            err_print("!_Section_name_didn't_end");
            break;
        }
        if (c ≠ '@') {
            err_print("!_Control_codes_are_forbidden_in_section_name");
            break;
        }
        *(++k) ← '@';
        loc++; /* now c ≡ *loc again */
    }

```

This code is used in section 53.

55. This function skips over a restricted context at relatively high speed.

```

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
    void skip_restricted();

```

```

56. void skip_restricted()
{
    id_first ← loc;
    *(limit + 1) ← '@';
false_alarm:
    while (*loc ≠ '@') loc++;
    id_loc ← loc;
    if (loc++ > limit) {
        err_print("!Control_text_didn't_end");
        loc ← limit;
    }
    else {
        if (*loc ≡ '@' ∧ loc ≤ limit) {
            loc++;
            goto false_alarm;
        }
        if (*loc++ ≠ '>') err_print("!Control_codes_are_forbidden_in_control_text");
    }
}

```

57. At the present point in the program we have $*(loc - 1) \equiv verbatim$; we set *id_first* to the beginning of the string itself, and *id_loc* to its ending-plus-one location in the buffer. We also set *loc* to the position just after the ending delimiter.

⟨Scan a verbatim string 57⟩ ≡

```

{
    id_first ← loc++;
    *(limit + 1) ← '@';
    *(limit + 2) ← '>';
    while (*loc ≠ '@' ∨ *(loc + 1) ≠ '>') loc++;
    if (loc ≥ limit) err_print("!Verbatim_string_didn't_end");
    id_loc ← loc;
    loc += 2;
    return (verbatim);
}

```

This code is used in section 50.

58. Phase one processing. We now have accumulated enough subroutines to make it possible to carry out `CWEAVE`'s first pass over the source file. If everything works right, both phase one and phase two of `CWEAVE` will assign the same numbers to sections, and these numbers will agree with what `CTANGLE` does.

The global variable `next_control` often contains the most recent output of `get_next`; in interesting cases, this will be the control code that ended a section or part of a section.

```
<Global variables 17> +=
  eight_bits next_control; /* control code waiting to be acting upon */
```

59. The overall processing strategy in phase one has the following straightforward outline.

```
<Predeclaration of procedures 2> +=
  void phase_one();
```

```
60. void phase_one()
{
  phase ← 1;
  reset_input();
  section_count ← 0;
  skip_limbo();
  change_exists ← 0;
  while ( $\neg$ input_has_ended) <Store cross-reference data for the current section 61>;
  changed_section[section_count] ← change_exists; /* the index changes if anything does */
  phase ← 2; /* prepare for second phase */
  <Print error messages about unused or undefined section names 76>;
}
```

```
61. <Store cross-reference data for the current section 61> ≡
{
  if ( $++$ section_count ≡ max_sections) overflow("section_number");
  changed_section[section_count] ← changing; /* it will become 1 if any line changes */
  if ( $*$ (loc - 1) ≡ '*' ^ show_progress) {
    printf("%d", section_count);
    update_terminal; /* print a progress report */
  }
  <Store cross-references in the TEX part of a section 66>;
  <Store cross-references in the definition part of a section 69>;
  <Store cross-references in the C part of a section 72>;
  if (changed_section[section_count]) change_exists ← 1;
}
```

This code is used in section 60.

62. The *C_xref* subroutine stores references to identifiers in C text material beginning with the current value of *next_control* and continuing until *next_control* is ‘{’ or ‘|’, or until the next “milestone” is passed (i.e., $next_control \geq format_code$). If $next_control \geq format_code$ when *C_xref* is called, nothing will happen; but if $next_control \equiv ' | '$ upon entry, the procedure assumes that this is the ‘|’ preceding C text that is to be processed.

The parameter *spec_ctrl* is used to change this behavior. In most cases *C_xref* is called with *spec_ctrl* $\equiv ignore$, which triggers the default processing described above. If *spec_ctrl* $\equiv section_name$, section names will be gobbled. This is used when C text in the T_EX part or inside comments is parsed: It allows for section names to appear in |...|, but these strings will not be entered into the cross reference lists since they are not definitions of section names.

The program uses the fact that our internal code numbers satisfy the relations $xref_roman \equiv identifier + roman$ and $xref_wildcard \equiv identifier + wildcard$ and $xref_typewriter \equiv identifier + typewriter$, as well as $normal \equiv 0$.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```
void C_xref();
```

```
63. void C_xref(spec_ctrl) /* makes cross-references for C identifiers */
      eight_bits spec_ctrl;
{
  name_pointer p; /* a referenced name */
  while (next_control < format_code ∨ next_control ≡ spec_ctrl) {
    if (next_control ≥ identifier ∧ next_control ≤ xref_typewriter) {
      if (next_control > identifier) ⟨Replace "@@" by "@" 67⟩
      p ← id.lookup(id_first, id_loc, next_control - identifier);
      new_xref(p);
    }
    if (next_control ≡ section_name) {
      section_xref_switch ← cite_flag;
      new_section_xref(cur_section);
    }
    next_control ← get_next();
    if (next_control ≡ ' | ' ∨ next_control ≡ begin_comment ∨ next_control ≡ begin_short_comment)
      return;
  }
}
```

64. The *outer_xref* subroutine is like *C_xref* except that it begins with $next_control \neq ' | '$ and ends with $next_control \geq format_code$. Thus, it handles C text with embedded comments.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```
void outer_xref();
```

```

65. void outer_xref() /* extension of C_xref */
{
  int bal; /* brace level in comment */
  while (next_control < format_code)
    if (next_control ≠ begin_comment ∧ next_control ≠ begin_short_comment) C_xref(ignore);
    else {
      boolean is_long_comment ← (next_control ≡ begin_comment);
      bal ← copy_comment(is_long_comment, 1);
      next_control ← '|';
      while (bal > 0) {
        C_xref(section_name); /* do not reference section names in comments */
        if (next_control ≡ '|') bal ← copy_comment(is_long_comment, bal);
        else bal ← 0; /* an error message will occur in phase two */
      }
    }
}

```

66. In the \TeX part of a section, cross-reference entries are made only for the identifiers in C texts enclosed in $| \dots |$, or for control texts enclosed in $@ \dots @>$ or $@. \dots @>$ or $@: \dots @>$.

⟨Store cross-references in the \TeX part of a section 66⟩ ≡

```

while (1) {
  switch (next_control ← skip- $\text{\TeX}$ ()) {
    case translit_code: err_print("! Use @l in limbo only");
      continue;
    case underline: xref_switch ← def_flag;
      continue;
    case trace: tracing ← *(loc - 1) - '0';
      continue;
    case '|': C_xref(section_name);
      break;
    case xref_roman: case xref_wildcard: case xref_typewriter: case noop: case section_name: loc -= 2;
      next_control ← get_next(); /* scan to @> */
      if (next_control ≥ xref_roman ∧ next_control ≤ xref_typewriter) {
        ⟨Replace "@@" by "@" 67⟩
        new_xref(id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, next_control - identifier));
      }
      break;
  }
  if (next_control ≥ format_code) break;
}

```

This code is used in section 61.

```

67. <Replace "@@" by "@" 67> ≡
{
  char *src ← id_first, *dst ← id_first;
  while (src < id_loc) {
    if (*src ≡ '@') src++;
    *dst++ ← *src++;
  }
  id_loc ← dst;
  while (dst < src) *dst++ ← '_'; /* clean up in case of error message display */
}

```

This code is used in sections 63 and 66.

68. During the definition and C parts of a section, cross-references are made for all identifiers except reserved words. However, the right identifier in a format definition is not referenced, and the left identifier is referenced only if it has been explicitly underlined (preceded by @!). The T_EX code in comments is, of course, ignored, except for C portions enclosed in | ... |; the text of a section name is skipped entirely, even if it contains | ... | constructions.

The variables *lhs* and *rhs* point to the respective identifiers involved in a format definition.

```

<Global variables 17> +≡
name_pointer lhs, rhs; /* pointers to byte_start for format identifiers */
name_pointer res_wd_end; /* pointer to the first nonreserved identifier */

```

69. When we get to the following code we have $next_control \geq format_code$.

```

<Store cross-references in the definition part of a section 69> ≡
while (next_control ≤ definition) { /* format_code or definition */
  if (next_control ≡ definition) {
    xref_switch ← def_flag; /* implied @! */
    next_control ← get_next();
  }
  else <Process a format definition 70>;
  outer_xref();
}

```

This code is used in section 61.

70. Error messages for improper format definitions will be issued in phase two. Our job in phase one is to define the *ilk* of a properly formatted identifier, and to remove cross-references to identifiers that we now discover should be unindexed.

```

⟨Process a format definition 70⟩ ≡
{
  next_control ← get_next();
  if (next_control ≡ identifier) {
    lhs ← id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal);
    lhs→ilk ← normal;
    if (xref_switch) new_xref(lhs);
    next_control ← get_next();
    if (next_control ≡ identifier) {
      rhs ← id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal);
      lhs→ilk ← rhs→ilk;
      if (unindexed(lhs)) { /* retain only underlined entries */
        xref_pointer q, r ← Λ;
        for (q ← (xref_pointer) lhs→xref; q > xmem; q ← q→xlink)
          if (q→num < def_flag)
            if (r) r→xlink ← q→xlink;
            else lhs→xref ← (char *) q→xlink;
          else r ← q;
        }
      next_control ← get_next();
    }
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 69.

71. A much simpler processing of format definitions occurs when the definition is found in limbo.

```

⟨Process simple format in limbo 71⟩ ≡
{
  if (get_next() ≠ identifier) err_print("!Missing_left_identifier_of_@s");
  else {
    lhs ← id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal);
    if (get_next() ≠ identifier) err_print("!Missing_right_identifier_of_@s");
    else {
      rhs ← id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal);
      lhs→ilk ← rhs→ilk;
    }
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 35.

72. Finally, when the \TeX and definition parts have been treated, we have $next_control \geq begin_C$.

```

⟨Store cross-references in the C part of a section 72⟩ ≡
if ( $next\_control \leq section\_name$ ) { /*  $begin\_C$  or  $section\_name$  */
  if ( $next\_control \equiv begin\_C$ )  $section\_xref\_switch \leftarrow 0$ ;
  else {
     $section\_xref\_switch \leftarrow def\_flag$ ;
    if ( $cur\_section\_char \equiv ' (' \wedge cur\_section \neq name\_dir$ )  $set\_file\_flag(cur\_section)$ ;
  }
  do {
    if ( $next\_control \equiv section\_name \wedge cur\_section \neq name\_dir$ )  $new\_section\_xref(cur\_section)$ ;
     $next\_control \leftarrow get\_next()$ ;
     $outer\_xref()$ ;
  } while ( $next\_control \leq section\_name$ );
}

```

This code is used in section 61.

73. After phase one has looked at everything, we want to check that each section name was both defined and used. The variable cur_xref will point to cross-references for the current section name of interest.

```

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡
xref_pointer  $cur\_xref$ ; /* temporary cross-reference pointer */
boolean  $an\_output$ ; /* did  $file\_flag$  precede  $cur\_xref$ ? */

```

74. The following recursive procedure walks through the tree of section names and prints out anomalies.

```

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
void  $section\_check()$ ;

```

```

75. void section_check(p)
    name_pointer p; /* print anomalies in subtree p */
{
  if (p) {
    section_check(p->llink);
    cur_xref ← (xref_pointer) p->xref;
    if (cur_xref->num ≡ file_flag) {
      an_output ← 1;
      cur_xref ← cur_xref->xlink;
    }
    else an_output ← 0;
    if (cur_xref->num < def_flag) {
      printf("\n!_Never_defined:_<");
      print_section_name(p);
      putchar('>');
      mark_harmless;
    }
    while (cur_xref->num ≥ cite_flag) cur_xref ← cur_xref->xlink;
    if (cur_xref ≡ xmem ∧ ¬an_output) {
      printf("\n!_Never_used:_<");
      print_section_name(p);
      putchar('>');
      mark_harmless;
    }
    section_check(p->rlink);
  }
}

```

76. ⟨Print error messages about unused or undefined section names 76⟩ ≡
section_check(root)

This code is used in section 60.

77. Low-level output routines. The \TeX output is supposed to appear in lines at most *line_length* characters long, so we place it into an output buffer. During the output process, *out_line* will hold the current line number of the line about to be output.

```
<Global variables 17> +=
char out_buf[line_length + 1]; /* assembled characters */
char *out_ptr; /* just after last character in out_buf */
char *out_buf_end ← out_buf + line_length; /* end of out_buf */
int out_line; /* number of next line to be output */
```

78. The *flush_buffer* routine empties the buffer up to a given breakpoint, and moves any remaining characters to the beginning of the next line. If the *per_cent* parameter is 1 a '%' is appended to the line that is being output; in this case the breakpoint *b* should be strictly less than *out_buf_end*. If the *per_cent* parameter is 0, trailing blanks are suppressed. The characters emptied from the buffer form a new line of output; if the *carryover* parameter is true, a "%" in that line will be carried over to the next line (so that \TeX will ignore the completion of commented-out text).

```
#define c_line_write(c) fflush(active_file), fwrite(out_buf + 1, sizeof(char), c, active_file)
#define tex_putc(c) putc(c, active_file)
#define tex_new_line putc('\n', active_file)
#define tex_printf(c) fprintf(active_file, c)

void flush_buffer(b, per_cent, carryover)
char *b; /* outputs from out_buf + 1 to b, where b ≤ out_ptr */
boolean per_cent, carryover;
{
char *j;
j ← b; /* pointer into out_buf */
if (¬per_cent) /* remove trailing blanks */
while (j > out_buf ∧ *j ≡ ' ') j--;
c_line_write(j - out_buf);
if (per_cent) tex_putc('%');
tex_new_line;
out_line++;
if (carryover)
while (j > out_buf)
if (*j-- ≡ '%' ∧ (j ≡ out_buf ∨ *j ≠ '\\')) {
*b-- ← '%';
break;
}
if (b < out_ptr) strncpy(out_buf + 1, b + 1, out_ptr - b);
out_ptr -= b - out_buf;
}
```

79. When we are copying T_EX source material, we retain line breaks that occur in the input, except that an empty line is not output when the T_EX source line was nonempty. For example, a line of the T_EX file that contains only an index cross-reference entry will not be copied. The *finish_line* routine is called just before *get_line* inputs a new line, and just after a line break token has been emitted during the output of translated C text.

```
void finish_line()    /* do this at the end of a line */
{
    char *k;         /* pointer into buffer */
    if (out_ptr > out_buf) flush_buffer(out_ptr, 0, 0);
    else {
        for (k ← buffer; k ≤ limit; k++)
            if (¬(xispace(*k))) return;
        flush_buffer(out_buf, 0, 0);
    }
}
```

80. In particular, the *finish_line* procedure is called near the very beginning of phase two. We initialize the output variables in a slightly tricky way so that the first line of the output file will be ‘\input cwebmac’.

```
⟨Set initial values 20⟩ +≡
out_ptr ← out_buf + 1;
out_line ← 1;
active_file ← tex_file;
*out_ptr ← 'c';
tex_printf("\\input_cwebma");
```

81. When we wish to append one character *c* to the output buffer, we write ‘*out(c)*’; this will cause the buffer to be emptied if it was already full. If we want to append more than one character at once, we say *out_str(s)*, where *s* is a string containing the characters.

A line break will occur at a space or after a single-nonletter T_EX control sequence.

```
#define out(c)
{
    if (out_ptr ≥ out_buf_end) break_out();
    *(++out_ptr) ← c;
}

void out_str(s)    /* output characters from s to end of string */
    char *s;
{
    while (*s) out(*s++);
}
```

82. The *break_out* routine is called just before the output buffer is about to overflow. To make this routine a little faster, we initialize position 0 of the output buffer to ‘\’; this character isn’t really output.

```
⟨Set initial values 20⟩ +≡
out_buf[0] ← '\\';
```

83. A long line is broken at a blank space or just before a backslash that isn’t preceded by another backslash. In the latter case, a ‘%’ is output at the break.

```
⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
void break_out();
```

```

84. void break_out() /* finds a way to break the output line */
{
    char *k ← out_ptr; /* pointer into out_buf */
    while (1) {
        if (k ≡ out_buf) ⟨Print warning message, break the line, return 85⟩;
        if (*k ≡ '␣') {
            flush_buffer(k, 0, 1);
            return;
        }
        if (*(k--) ≡ '\\\ ' ∧ *k ≠ '\\\ ') { /* we've decreased k */
            flush_buffer(k, 1, 1);
            return;
        }
    }
}

```

85. We get to this section only in the unusual case that the entire output line consists of a string of backslashes followed by a string of nonblank non-backslashes. In such cases it is almost always safe to break the line by putting a '%' just before the last character.

```

⟨Print warning message, break the line, return 85⟩ ≡
{
    printf("\n!␣Line␣had␣to␣be␣broken␣(output␣l.␣%d):\n", out_line);
    term_write(out_buf + 1, out_ptr - out_buf - 1);
    new_line;
    mark_harmless;
    flush_buffer(out_ptr - 1, 1, 1);
    return;
}

```

This code is used in section 84.

86. Here is a macro that outputs a section number in decimal notation. The number to be converted by *out_section* is known to be less than *def_flag*, so it cannot have more than five decimal digits. If the section is changed, we output '*' just after the number.

```

void out_section(n)
    sixteen_bits n;
{
    char s[6];
    sprintf(s, "%d", n);
    out_str(s);
    if (changed_section[n]) out_str("\\*");
}

```

87. The *out_name* procedure is used to output an identifier or index entry, enclosing it in braces.

```
void out_name(p, quote_xalpha)
    name_pointer p;
    boolean quote_xalpha;
{
    char *k, *k_end ← (p + 1)-byte_start;    /* pointers into byte_mem */
    out('{');
    for (k ← p-byte_start; k < k_end; k++) {
        if (isxalpha(*k) ∧ quote_xalpha) out('\\');
        out(*k);
    }
    out('}');
}
```

88. Routines that copy T_EX material. During phase two, we use subroutines *copy_limbo*, *copy_T_EX*, and *copy_comment* in place of the analogous *skip_limbo*, *skip_T_EX*, and *skip_comment* that were used in phase one. (Well, *copy_comment* was actually written in such a way that it functions as *skip_comment* in phase one.)

The *copy_limbo* routine, for example, takes T_EX material that is not part of any section and transcribes it almost verbatim to the output file. The use of ‘@’ signs is severely restricted in such material: ‘@@’ pairs are replaced by singletons; ‘@l’ and ‘@q’ and ‘@s’ are interpreted.

```
void copy_limbo()
{
  char c;
  while (1) {
    if (loc > limit ^ (finish_line(), get_line() == 0)) return;
    *(limit + 1) = '@';
    while (*loc != '@') out(*(loc++));
    if (loc++ <= limit) {
      c = *loc++;
      if (ccode[(eight_bits) c] == new_section) break;
      switch (ccode[(eight_bits) c]) {
        case translit_code: out_str("\\ATL");
          break;
        case '@': out('@');
          break;
        case noop: skip_restricted();
          break;
        case format_code:
          if (get_next() == identifier) get_next();
          if (loc >= limit) get_line(); /* avoid blank lines in output */
          break; /* the operands of @s are ignored on this pass */
        default: err_print("! Double @ should be used in limbo");
          out('@');
      }
    }
  }
}
```

89. The *copy_T_EX* routine processes the T_EX code at the beginning of a section; for example, the words you are now reading were copied in this way. It returns the next control code or ‘|’ found in the input. We don’t copy spaces or tab marks into the beginning of a line. This makes the test for empty lines in *finish_line* work.

90. `format copy_TeX TeX`

```

eight_bits copy_TEX()
{
  char c; /* current character being copied */
  while (1) {
    if (loc > limit ∧ (finish_line(), get_line() ≡ 0)) return (new_section);
    *(limit + 1) ← '⓪';
    while ((c ← *(loc++)) ≠ '|' ∧ c ≠ '⓪') {
      out(c);
      if (out_ptr ≡ out_buf + 1 ∧ (xisspace(c))) out_ptr--;
    }
    if (c ≡ '|') return ('|');
    if (loc ≤ limit) return (ccode[(eight_bits) *(loc++)]);
  }
}

```

91. The `copy_comment` function issues a warning if more braces are opened than closed, and in the case of a more serious error it supplies enough braces to keep T_EX from complaining about unbalanced braces. Instead of copying the T_EX material into the output buffer, this function copies it into the token memory (in phase two only). The abbreviation `app_tok(t)` is used to append token t to the current token list, and it also makes sure that it is possible to append at least one further token without overflow.

```

#define app_tok(c)
  {
    if (tok_ptr + 2 > tok_mem_end) overflow("token");
    *(tok_ptr++) ← c;
  }

```

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```

int copy_comment();

```



```

92. int copy_comment(is_long_comment, bal)    /* copies TEX code in comments */
   boolean is_long_comment;    /* is this a traditional C comment? */
   int bal;    /* brace balance */
{
  char c;    /* current character being copied */
  while (1) {
    if (loc > limit) {
      if (is_long_comment) {
        if (get_line() ≡ 0) {
          err_print("!Input_ended_in_mid-comment");
          loc ← buffer + 1;
          goto done;
        }
      }
    }
    else {
      if (bal > 1) err_print("!Missing}_in_comment");
      goto done;
    }
  }
  c ← *(loc++);
  if (c ≡ '|') return (bal);
  if (is_long_comment) < Check for end of comment 93>;
  if (phase ≡ 2) {
    if (ishigh(c)) app_tok(quoted_char);
    app_tok(c);
  }
  < Copy special things when c ≡ '@', '\\ ' 94>;
  if (c ≡ '{') bal++;
  else if (c ≡ '}') {
    if (bal > 1) bal--;
    else {
      err_print("!Extra}_in_comment");
      if (phase ≡ 2) tok_ptr--;
    }
  }
}
done: < Clear bal and return 95>;
}

```

```

93. < Check for end of comment 93> ≡
if (c ≡ '*' ^ *loc ≡ '/') {
  loc++;
  if (bal > 1) err_print("!Missing}_in_comment");
  goto done;
}

```

This code is used in section 92.

```

94. < Copy special things when  $c \equiv '\@', '\\'$  94 >  $\equiv$ 
  if ( $c \equiv '\@'$ ) {
    if ( $*(loc++) \neq '\@'$ ) {
      err_print("!_Illegal_use_of_@_in_comment");
       $loc -= 2$ ;
      if ( $phase \equiv 2$ )  $*(tok_ptr - 1) \leftarrow '\_'$ ;
      goto done;
    }
  }
  else if ( $c \equiv '\\'$   $\wedge$   $*loc \neq '\@'$ ) if ( $phase \equiv 2$ ) app_tok( $*(loc++)$ )
  else  $loc++$ ;

```

This code is used in section 92.

95. We output enough right braces to keep T_EX happy.

```

< Clear bal and return 95 >  $\equiv$ 
  if ( $phase \equiv 2$ )
    while ( $bal-- > 0$ ) app_tok('}');
  return (0);

```

This code is used in section 92.

96. Parsing. The most intricate part of **CWEAVE** is its mechanism for converting C-like code into **TEX** code, and we might as well plunge into this aspect of the program now. A “bottom up” approach is used to parse the C-like material, since **CWEAVE** must deal with fragmentary constructions whose overall “part of speech” is not known.

At the lowest level, the input is represented as a sequence of entities that we shall call *scraps*, where each scrap of information consists of two parts, its *category* and its *translation*. The category is essentially a syntactic class, and the translation is a token list that represents **TEX** code. Rules of syntax and semantics tell us how to combine adjacent scraps into larger ones, and if we are lucky an entire C text that starts out as hundreds of small scraps will join together into one gigantic scrap whose translation is the desired **TEX** code. If we are unlucky, we will be left with several scraps that don’t combine; their translations will simply be output, one by one.

The combination rules are given as context-sensitive productions that are applied from left to right. Suppose that we are currently working on the sequence of scraps $s_1 s_2 \dots s_n$. We try first to find the longest production that applies to an initial substring $s_1 s_2 \dots$; but if no such productions exist, we try to find the longest production applicable to the next substring $s_2 s_3 \dots$; and if that fails, we try to match $s_3 s_4 \dots$, etc.

A production applies if the category codes have a given pattern. For example, one of the productions (see rule 3) is

$$exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} binop \\ ubinop \end{array} \right\} exp \rightarrow exp$$

and it means that three consecutive scraps whose respective categories are *exp*, *binop* (or *ubinop*), and *exp* are converted to one scrap whose category is *exp*. The translations of the original scraps are simply concatenated. The case of

$$exp \textit{ comma } exp \rightarrow exp \qquad E_1 C \textit{ opt9 } E_2$$

(rule 4) is only slightly more complicated: Here the resulting *exp* translation consists not only of the three original translations, but also of the tokens *opt* and 9 between the translations of the *comma* and the following *exp*. In the **TEX** file, this will specify an optional line break after the comma, with penalty 90.

At each opportunity the longest possible production is applied. For example, if the current sequence of scraps is *int_like cast lbrace*, rule 31 is applied; but if the sequence is *int_like cast* followed by anything other than *lbrace*, rule 32 takes effect.

Translation rules such as ‘ $E_1 C \textit{ opt9 } E_2$ ’ above use subscripts to distinguish between translations of scraps whose categories have the same initial letter; these subscripts are assigned from left to right.

97. Here is a list of the category codes that scraps can have. (A few others, like *int_like*, have already been defined; the *cat_name* array contains a complete list.)

```

#define exp 1 /* denotes an expression, including perhaps a single identifier */
#define unop 2 /* denotes a unary operator */
#define binop 3 /* denotes a binary operator */
#define ubinop 4 /* denotes an operator that can be unary or binary, depending on context */
#define cast 5 /* denotes a cast */
#define question 6 /* denotes a question mark and possibly the expressions flanking it */
#define lbrace 7 /* denotes a left brace */
#define rbrace 8 /* denotes a right brace */
#define decl.head 9 /* denotes an incomplete declaration */
#define comma 10 /* denotes a comma */
#define lpar 11 /* denotes a left parenthesis or left bracket */
#define rpar 12 /* denotes a right parenthesis or right bracket */
#define preangle 13 /* denotes '<' before we know what it is */
#define prerangle 14 /* denotes '>' before we know what it is */
#define langle 15 /* denotes '<' when it's used as angle bracket in a template */
#define colcol 18 /* denotes '::' */
#define base 19 /* denotes a colon that introduces a base specifier */
#define decl 20 /* denotes a complete declaration */
#define struct.head 21 /* denotes the beginning of a structure specifier */
#define stmt 23 /* denotes a complete statement */
#define function 24 /* denotes a complete function */
#define fn_decl 25 /* denotes a function declarator */
#define semi 27 /* denotes a semicolon */
#define colon 28 /* denotes a colon */
#define tag 29 /* denotes a statement label */
#define if.head 30 /* denotes the beginning of a compound conditional */
#define else.head 31 /* denotes a prefix for a compound statement */
#define if_clause 32 /* pending if together with a condition */
#define lproc 35 /* begins a preprocessor command */
#define rproc 36 /* ends a preprocessor command */
#define insert 37 /* a scrap that gets combined with its neighbor */
#define section_scrap 38 /* section name */
#define dead 39 /* scrap that won't combine */
#define ftemplate 59 /* make_pair */
#define new_exp 60 /* new and a following type identifier */
#define begin_arg 61 /* @[ */
#define end_arg 62 /* @] */

```

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=

```

char cat_name[256][12];
eight_bits cat_index;

```

98. \langle Set initial values 20 $\rangle + \equiv$

```

for (cat_index ← 0; cat_index < 255; cat_index++) strcpy(cat_name[cat_index], "UNKNOWN");
strcpy(cat_name[exp], "exp");
strcpy(cat_name[unop], "unop");
strcpy(cat_name[binop], "binop");
strcpy(cat_name[ubinop], "ubinop");
strcpy(cat_name[cast], "cast");
strcpy(cat_name[question], "?");
strcpy(cat_name[lbrace], "{");
strcpy(cat_name[rbrace], "}");
strcpy(cat_name[decl_head], "decl_head");
strcpy(cat_name[comma], ",");
strcpy(cat_name[lpar], "(");
strcpy(cat_name[rpar], ")");
strcpy(cat_name[prelangle], "<");
strcpy(cat_name[prerangle], ">");
strcpy(cat_name[langle], "\\<");
strcpy(cat_name[colcol], "::");
strcpy(cat_name[base], "\\:");
strcpy(cat_name[decl], "decl");
strcpy(cat_name[struct_head], "struct_head");
strcpy(cat_name[alfop], "alfop");
strcpy(cat_name[stmt], "stmt");
strcpy(cat_name[function], "function");
strcpy(cat_name[fn_decl], "fn_decl");
strcpy(cat_name[else_like], "else_like");
strcpy(cat_name[semi], ";");
strcpy(cat_name[colon], ":");
strcpy(cat_name[tag], "tag");
strcpy(cat_name[if_head], "if_head");
strcpy(cat_name[else_head], "else_head");
strcpy(cat_name[if_clause], "if()");
strcpy(cat_name[lproc], "#{");
strcpy(cat_name[rproc], "#}");
strcpy(cat_name[insert], "insert");
strcpy(cat_name[section_scrap], "section");
strcpy(cat_name[dead], "@d");
strcpy(cat_name[public_like], "public");
strcpy(cat_name[operator_like], "operator");
strcpy(cat_name[new_like], "new");
strcpy(cat_name[catch_like], "catch");
strcpy(cat_name[for_like], "for");
strcpy(cat_name[do_like], "do");
strcpy(cat_name[if_like], "if");
strcpy(cat_name[delete_like], "delete");
strcpy(cat_name[raw_ubin], "ubinop?");
strcpy(cat_name[const_like], "const");
strcpy(cat_name[raw_int], "raw");
strcpy(cat_name[int_like], "int");
strcpy(cat_name[case_like], "case");
strcpy(cat_name[sizeof_like], "sizeof");
strcpy(cat_name[struct_like], "struct");

```

```
strcpy(cat_name[typedef_like], "typedef");
strcpy(cat_name[define_like], "define");
strcpy(cat_name[template_like], "template");
strcpy(cat_name[ftemplate], "ftemplate");
strcpy(cat_name[new_exp], "new_exp");
strcpy(cat_name[begin_arg], "@[");
strcpy(cat_name[end_arg], "@]");
strcpy(cat_name[0], "zero");
```

99. This code allows **CWEAVE** to display its parsing steps.

```
void print_cat(c) /* symbolic printout of a category */
    eight_bits c;
{
    printf(cat_name[c]);
}
```

100. The token lists for translated \TeX output contain some special control symbols as well as ordinary characters. These control symbols are interpreted by **CWEAVE** before they are written to the output file.

break_space denotes an optional line break or an en space;

force denotes a line break;

big_force denotes a line break with additional vertical space;

preproc_line denotes that the line will be printed flush left;

opt denotes an optional line break (with the continuation line indented two ems with respect to the normal starting position)—this code is followed by an integer n , and the break will occur with penalty $10n$;

backup denotes a backspace of one em;

cancel obliterates any *break_space*, *opt*, *force*, or *big_force* tokens that immediately precede or follow it and also cancels any *backup* tokens that follow it;

indent causes future lines to be indented one more em;

outdent causes future lines to be indented one less em.

All of these tokens are removed from the \TeX output that comes from C text between `| ... |` signs; *break_space* and *force* and *big_force* become single spaces in this mode. The translation of other C texts results in \TeX control sequences `\1`, `\2`, `\3`, `\4`, `\5`, `\6`, `\7`, `\8` corresponding respectively to *indent*, *outdent*, *opt*, *backup*, *break_space*, *force*, *big_force* and *preproc_line*. However, a sequence of consecutive ‘`\1`’, *break_space*, *force*, and/or *big_force* tokens is first replaced by a single token (the maximum of the given ones).

The token *math_rel* will be translated into `\MRL{`, and it will get a matching `}` later. Other control sequences in the \TeX output will be ‘`\{ ... }`’ surrounding identifiers, ‘`\&{ ... }`’ surrounding reserved words, ‘`\. { ... }`’ surrounding strings, ‘`\C{ ... }`’ surrounding comments, and ‘`\Xn: ... \X`’ surrounding section names, where n is the section number.

```
#define math_rel °206
#define big_cancel °210 /* like cancel, also overrides spaces */
#define cancel °211 /* overrides backup, break_space, force, big_force */
#define indent °212 /* one more tab (\1) */
#define outdent °213 /* one less tab (\2) */
#define opt °214 /* optional break in mid-statement (\3) */
#define backup °215 /* stick out one unit to the left (\4) */
#define break_space °216 /* optional break between statements (\5) */
#define force °217 /* forced break between statements (\6) */
#define big_force °220 /* forced break with additional space (\7) */
#define preproc_line °221 /* begin line without indentation (\8) */
#define quoted_char °222 /* introduces a character token in the range °200-°377 */
#define end_translation °223 /* special sentinel token at end of list */
#define inserted °224 /* sentinel to mark translations of inserts */
#define qualifier °225 /* introduces an explicit namespace qualifier */
```

101. The raw input is converted into scraps according to the following table, which gives category codes followed by the translations. The symbol ‘**’ stands for ‘\{identifier}’, i.e., the identifier itself treated as a reserved word. The right-hand column is the so-called *mathness*, which is explained further below.

An identifier *c* of length 1 is translated as \|c instead of as \{c}. An identifier CAPS in all caps is translated as \.{CAPS} instead of as \{CAPS}. An identifier that has become a reserved word via **typedef** is translated with \& replacing \| and *raw_int* replacing *exp*.

A string of length greater than 20 is broken into pieces of size at most 20 with discretionary breaks in between.

| | | |
|------------|---|-------|
| != | <i>binop</i> : \I | yes |
| <= | <i>binop</i> : \Z | yes |
| >= | <i>binop</i> : \G | yes |
| == | <i>binop</i> : \E | yes |
| && | <i>binop</i> : \W | yes |
| | <i>binop</i> : \V | yes |
| ++ | <i>unop</i> : \PP | yes |
| -- | <i>unop</i> : \MM | yes |
| -> | <i>binop</i> : \MG | yes |
| >> | <i>binop</i> : \GG | yes |
| << | <i>binop</i> : \LL | yes |
| :: | <i>colcol</i> : \DC | maybe |
| .* | <i>binop</i> : \PA | yes |
| ->* | <i>binop</i> : \MGA | yes |
| ... | <i>raw_int</i> : \, \ldots \, | yes |
| "string" | <i>exp</i> : \.{string with special characters quoted} | maybe |
| @=string@> | <i>exp</i> : \vb{string with special characters quoted} | maybe |
| @'7' | <i>exp</i> : \.{@'7'} | maybe |
| 077 or \77 | <i>exp</i> : \T{\~77} | maybe |
| 0x7f | <i>exp</i> : \T{\^7f} | maybe |
| 77 | <i>exp</i> : \T{77} | maybe |
| 77L | <i>exp</i> : \T{77\\$_L} | maybe |
| 0.1E5 | <i>exp</i> : \T{0.1_5} | maybe |
| + | <i>ubinop</i> : + | yes |
| - | <i>ubinop</i> : - | yes |
| * | <i>raw_ubin</i> : * | yes |
| / | <i>binop</i> : / | yes |
| < | <i>prelangle</i> : \langle | yes |
| = | <i>binop</i> : \K | yes |
| > | <i>prerangle</i> : \rangle | yes |
| . | <i>binop</i> : . | yes |
| | <i>binop</i> : \OR | yes |
| ^ | <i>binop</i> : \XOR | yes |
| % | <i>binop</i> : \MOD | yes |
| ? | <i>question</i> : \? | yes |
| ! | <i>unop</i> : \R | yes |
| ~ | <i>unop</i> : \CM | yes |
| & | <i>raw_ubin</i> : \AND | yes |
| (| <i>lpar</i> : (| maybe |
| [| <i>lpar</i> : [| maybe |
|) | <i>rpar</i> :) | maybe |
|] | <i>rpar</i> :] | maybe |
| { | <i>lbrace</i> : { | yes |
| } | <i>lbrace</i> : } | yes |

| | | |
|------------------|---|-------|
| , | <i>comma</i> : , | yes |
| ; | <i>semi</i> : ; | maybe |
| : | <i>colon</i> : : | no |
| # (within line) | <i>ubinop</i> : \# | yes |
| # (at beginning) | <i>lproc</i> : <i>force preproc_line</i> \# | no |
| end of # line | <i>rproc</i> : <i>force</i> | no |
| identifier | <i>exp</i> : \\{identifier with underlines and dollar signs quoted} | maybe |
| and | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| and_eq | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| asm | <i>sizeof_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| auto | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| bitand | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| bitor | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| bool | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| break | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| case | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| catch | <i>catch_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| char | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| class | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| clock_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| compl | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| const | <i>const_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| const_cast | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| continue | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| default | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| define | <i>define_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| defined | <i>sizeof_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| delete | <i>delete_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| div_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| do | <i>do_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| double | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| dynamic_cast | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| elif | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| else | <i>else_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| endif | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| enum | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| error | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| explicit | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| export | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| extern | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| FILE | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| float | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| for | <i>for_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| fpos_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| friend | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| goto | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| if | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| ifdef | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| ifndef | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| include | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| inline | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| int | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |

| | | |
|------------------|--|-------|
| jmp_buf | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| ldiv_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| line | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| long | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| make_pair | <i>ftemplate</i> : <code>\\{make_pair}</code> | maybe |
| mutable | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| namespace | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| new | <i>new_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| not | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| not_eq | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| NULL | <i>exp</i> : <code>\NULL</code> | yes |
| offsetof | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| operator | <i>operator_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| or | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| or_eq | <i>alfop</i> : ** | yes |
| pragma | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| private | <i>public_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| protected | <i>public_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| ptrdiff_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| public | <i>public_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| register | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| reinterpret_cast | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| return | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| short | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| sig_atomic_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| signed | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| size_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| sizeof | <i>sizeof_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| static | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| static_cast | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| struct | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| switch | <i>for_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| template | <i>template_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| TeX | <i>exp</i> : <code>\TeX</code> | yes |
| this | <i>exp</i> : <code>\this</code> | yes |
| throw | <i>case_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| time_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| try | <i>else_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| typedef | <i>typedef_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| typeid | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| typename | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| undef | <i>if_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| union | <i>struct_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| unsigned | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| using | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| va_dcl | <i>decl</i> : ** | maybe |
| va_list | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| virtual | <i>int_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| void | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| volatile | <i>const_like</i> : ** | maybe |
| wchar_t | <i>raw_int</i> : ** | maybe |
| while | <i>for_like</i> : ** | maybe |

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|-------|
| <code>xor</code> | <code>alfop: **</code> | yes |
| <code>xor_eq</code> | <code>alfop: **</code> | yes |
| <code>@,</code> | <code>insert: \,</code> | maybe |
| <code>@ </code> | <code>insert: opt 0</code> | maybe |
| <code>@/</code> | <code>insert: force</code> | no |
| <code>@#</code> | <code>insert: big_force</code> | no |
| <code>@+</code> | <code>insert: big_cancel {} break_space {} big_cancel</code> | no |
| <code>@;</code> | <code>semi:</code> | maybe |
| <code>@[</code> | <code>begin_arg:</code> | maybe |
| <code>@]</code> | <code>end_arg:</code> | maybe |
| <code>@&</code> | <code>insert: \J</code> | maybe |
| <code>@h</code> | <code>insert: force \ATH force</code> | no |
| <code>@< section name @></code> | <code>section_scrap: \Xn: translated section name \X</code> | maybe |
| <code>@(section name @></code> | <code>section_scrap: \Xn:\.{section name with special characters quoted}_\X</code> | maybe |
| <code>/*comment*/</code> | <code>insert: cancel \C{translated comment} force</code> | no |
| <code>//comment</code> | <code>insert: cancel \SHC{translated comment} force</code> | no |

The construction `@t stuff @>` contributes `\hbox{stuff}` to the following scrap.

102. Here is a table of all the productions. Each production that combines two or more consecutive scraps implicitly inserts a \$ where necessary, that is, between scraps whose abutting boundaries have different *mathness*. In this way we never get double \$\$.

A translation is provided when the resulting scrap is not merely a juxtaposition of the scraps it comes from. An asterisk* next to a scrap means that its first identifier gets an underlined entry in the index, via the function *make_underlined*. Two asterisks** means that both *make_underlined* and *make_reserved* are called; that is, the identifier's ilk becomes *raw_int*. A dagger † before the production number refers to the notes at the end of this section, which deal with various exceptional cases.

We use *in*, *out*, *back* and *bsp* as shorthands for *indent*, *outdent*, *backup* and *break_space*, respectively.

| LHS | → RHS | Translation | Example |
|--|--|---|--|
| 0 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} any \\ any\ any \\ any\ any\ any \end{array} \right\} insert$ | → $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} any \\ any\ any \\ any\ any\ any \end{array} \right\}$ | | stmt; /*comment*/ |
| 1 $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lbrace \\ int_like \\ decl \end{array} \right\}$ | → $fn_decl \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lbrace \\ int_like \\ decl \end{array} \right\}$ | $F = E^* in in$ | <i>main</i> () { <i>main</i> (<i>ac</i> , <i>av</i>) int <i>ac</i> ; |
| 2 $exp unop$ | → exp | | <i>x</i> ++ |
| 3 $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} binop \\ ubinop \end{array} \right\} exp$ | → exp | | <i>x</i> / <i>y</i> <i>x</i> + <i>y</i> |
| 4 $exp comma exp$ | → exp | $EC\ opt9\ E$ | <i>f</i> (<i>x</i> , <i>y</i>) |
| 5 $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar\ rpar \\ cast \end{array} \right\} colon$ | → $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar\ rpar \\ cast \end{array} \right\} base$ | | C (): Cint <i>i</i>): |
| 6 $exp semi$ | → $stmt$ | | <i>x</i> ← 0; |
| 7 $exp colon$ | → tag | E^*C | <i>found</i> : |
| 8 $exp rbrace$ | → $stmt\ rbrace$ | | end of enum list |
| 9 $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar\ rpar \\ cast \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} const_like \\ case_like \end{array} \right\}$ | → $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar\ rpar \\ cast \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} R = R_{\sqcup}C \\ C_1 = C_{1\sqcup}C_2 \end{array} \right\}$ | <i>f</i> () const <i>f</i> (int) throw |
| 10 $exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ cast \end{array} \right\}$ | → exp | | <i>time</i> () |
| 11 $lpar \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ ubinop \end{array} \right\} rpar$ | → exp | | (<i>x</i>) (*) |
| 12 $lpar\ rpar$ | → exp | $L\ \wedge\ R$ | functions, declarations |
| 13 $lpar \left\{ \begin{array}{l} decl_head \\ int_like \\ cast \end{array} \right\} rpar$ | → $cast$ | | (char *) |
| 14 $lpar \left\{ \begin{array}{l} decl_head \\ int_like \\ exp \end{array} \right\} comma$ | → $lpar$ | $L \left\{ \begin{array}{l} D \\ I \\ E \end{array} \right\} C\ opt9$ | (int , |
| 15 $lpar \left\{ \begin{array}{l} stmt \\ decl \end{array} \right\}$ | → $lpar$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} LS_{\sqcup} \\ LD_{\sqcup} \end{array} \right\}$ | (<i>k</i> ← 5; (int <i>k</i> ← 5; |
| 16 $unop \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | → exp | | ¬ <i>x</i> ~ C |
| 17 $ubinop\ cast\ rpar$ | → $cast\ rpar$ | $C = \{U\}C$ | * CPtr) |
| 18 $ubinop \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | → $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\{U\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \\ I \end{array} \right\}$ | * <i>x</i> * CPtr |
| 19 $ubinop\ binop$ | → $binop$ | $math_rel\ U\ \{B\}$ | *= |
| 20 $binop\ binop$ | → $binop$ | $math_rel\ \{B_1\}\ \{B_2\}$ | >>= |

| | | | | |
|-----|---|--|--|--|
| 21 | $cast \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} CL \\ C \sqcup E \end{array} \right\}$ | $(double)(x + 2)$ $(double) x$ |
| 22 | $cast\ semi$ | $\rightarrow exp\ semi$ | | $(int);$ |
| 23 | $sizeof_like\ cast$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | | $sizeof(double)$ |
| 24 | $sizeof_like\ exp$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | $S \sqcup E$ | $sizeof x$ |
| 25 | $int_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ struct_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ struct_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $I \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ S \end{array} \right\}$ | extern char |
| 26 | $int_like\ exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} raw_int \\ struct_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow int_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} raw_int \\ struct_like \end{array} \right\}$ | | extern"Ada" int |
| 27 | $int_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ ubinop \\ colon \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow decl_head \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ ubinop \\ colon \end{array} \right\}$ | $D = I \sqcup$ | int x int *x unsigned : |
| 28 | $int_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} semi \\ binop \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow decl_head \left\{ \begin{array}{l} semi \\ binop \end{array} \right\}$ | | int x; int f(int = 4) |
| 29 | $public_like\ colon$ | $\rightarrow tag$ | | private: |
| 30 | $public_like$ | $\rightarrow int_like$ | | private |
| 31 | $colcol \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $qualifier\ C \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \\ I \end{array} \right\}$ | C :: x |
| 32 | $colcol\ colcol$ | $\rightarrow colcol$ | | C :: B :: |
| 33 | $decl_head\ comma$ | $\rightarrow decl_head$ | $DC \sqcup$ | int x, |
| 34 | $decl_head\ ubinop$ | $\rightarrow decl_head$ | $D\{U\}$ | int * |
| †35 | $decl_head\ exp$ | $\rightarrow decl_head$ | DE^* | int x |
| 36 | $decl_head \left\{ \begin{array}{l} binop \\ colon \end{array} \right\} exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} comma \\ semi \\ rpar \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow decl_head \left\{ \begin{array}{l} comma \\ semi \\ rpar \end{array} \right\}$ | $D = D \left\{ \begin{array}{l} B \\ C \end{array} \right\} E$ | int f(int x = 2) int b : 1 |
| 37 | $decl_head\ cast$ | $\rightarrow decl_head$ | | int f(int) |
| 38 | $decl_head \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ lbrace \\ decl \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow fn_decl \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ lbrace \\ decl \end{array} \right\}$ | $F = D\ in\ in$ | long time() { |
| 39 | $decl_head\ semi$ | $\rightarrow decl$ | | int n; |
| 40 | $decl\ decl$ | $\rightarrow decl$ | $D_1\ force\ D_2$ | int n; double x; |
| 41 | $decl \left\{ \begin{array}{l} stmt \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} stmt \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $D\ big_force \left\{ \begin{array}{l} S \\ F \end{array} \right\}$ | extern n; main () { } |
| 42 | $base \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ exp \end{array} \right\} comma$ | $\rightarrow base$ | $B \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ E \end{array} \right\} C\ opt9$ | : public A, : i(5), |
| 43 | $base \left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ exp \end{array} \right\} lbrace$ | $\rightarrow lbrace$ | $B \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ E \end{array} \right\} \sqcup L$ | D : public A { |
| 44 | $struct_like\ lbrace$ | $\rightarrow struct_head$ | $S \sqcup L$ | struct { |
| 45 | $struct_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\} semi$ | $\rightarrow decl_head\ semi$ | $S \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E^{**} \\ I^{**} \end{array} \right\}$ | struct forward; |
| 46 | $struct_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\} lbrace$ | $\rightarrow struct_head$ | $S \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E^{**} \\ I^{**} \end{array} \right\} \sqcup L$ | struct name_info { |
| 47 | $struct_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\} colon$ | $\rightarrow struct_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\} base$ | | class C : |
| †48 | $struct_like \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow int_like$ | $S \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \\ I \end{array} \right\}$ | struct name_info z; |

| | | | | |
|-----|--|--|---|---|
| 49 | $struct_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} decl \\ stmt \\ function \end{array} \right\} rbrace$ | $\rightarrow int_like$ | S in force $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} D \\ S \\ F \end{array} \right\}$ out force R | struct { declaration } |
| 50 | $struct_head rbrace$ | $\rightarrow int_like$ | $S \setminus, R$ | class C { } |
| 51 | $fn_decl decl$ | $\rightarrow fn_decl$ | F force D | $f(z)$ double z ; |
| 52 | $fn_decl stmt$ | $\rightarrow function$ | F out out force S | $main() \dots$ |
| 53 | $function \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | F big_force $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} S \\ D \\ F \end{array} \right\}$ | outer block |
| 54 | $lbrace rbrace$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | $L \setminus, R$ | empty statement |
| 55 | $lbrace \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\} rbrace$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | force L in force S force back R out force | compound statement |
| 56 | $lbrace exp [comma] rbrace$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | | initializer |
| 57 | $if_like exp$ | $\rightarrow if_clause$ | $I \sqcup E$ | if (z) |
| 58 | $else_like colon$ | $\rightarrow else_like base$ | | try : |
| 59 | $else_like lbrace$ | $\rightarrow else_head lbrace$ | | else { |
| 60 | $else_like stmt$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | force E in bsp S out force | else $x \leftarrow 0$; |
| 61 | $else_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | force E bsp noop cancel S bsp | else { $x \leftarrow 0$; } |
| 62 | $if_clause lbrace$ | $\rightarrow if_head lbrace$ | | if (x) { |
| 63 | $if_clause stmt else_like if_like$ | $\rightarrow if_like$ | force I in bsp S out force $E \sqcup I$ | if (x) y ; else if |
| 64 | $if_clause stmt else_like$ | $\rightarrow else_like$ | force I in bsp S out force E | if (x) y ; else |
| 65 | $if_clause stmt$ | $\rightarrow else_like stmt$ | | if (x) |
| 66 | $if_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ exp \end{array} \right\} else_like if_like$ | $\rightarrow if_like$ | force I bsp noop cancel S force $E \sqcup I$ | if (x) { y ; } else if |
| 67 | $if_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ exp \end{array} \right\} else_like$ | $\rightarrow else_like$ | force I bsp noop cancel S force E | if (x) { y ; } else |
| 68 | $if_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow else_head \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | | if (x) { y ; } |
| 69 | $do_like stmt else_like semi$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | D bsp noop cancel S cancel noop bsp ES | do $f(x)$; while ($g(x)$); |
| 70 | $case_like semi$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | | return ; |
| 71 | $case_like colon$ | $\rightarrow tag$ | | default : |
| 72 | $case_like exp$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | $C \sqcup E$ | return 0 |
| 73 | $catch_like \left\{ \begin{array}{c} cast \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow fn_decl$ | $C \left\{ \begin{array}{c} C \\ E \end{array} \right\}$ in in | catch (...) |
| 74 | $tag tag$ | $\rightarrow tag$ | T_1 bsp T_2 | case 0: case 1: |
| 75 | $tag \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | force back T bsp S | case 0: $z \leftarrow 0$; |
| †76 | $stmt \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{c} stmt \\ decl \\ function \end{array} \right\}$ | $S \left\{ \begin{array}{c} force S \\ big_force D \\ big_force F \end{array} \right\}$ | $x \leftarrow 1$; $y \leftarrow 2$; |
| 77 | $semi$ | $\rightarrow stmt$ | $\sqcup S$ | empty statement |
| †78 | $lproc \left\{ \begin{array}{c} if_like \\ else_like \\ define_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow lproc$ | | #include |
| | | | | #else |
| | | | | #define |
| 79 | $lproc rproc$ | $\rightarrow insert$ | | #endif |

| | | | | |
|------|---|--|--|---|
| 80 | $lproc \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ function \end{array} \right\} rproc$ | $\rightarrow insert$ | $I \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \setminus 5E \\ F \end{array} \right\}$ | #define <i>a</i> 1 #define <i>a</i> { <i>b</i> ; } |
| 81 | <i>section_scrap semi</i> | $\rightarrow stmt$ | <i>MS force</i> | $\langle section\ name \rangle;$ |
| 82 | <i>section_scrap</i> | $\rightarrow exp$ | | $\langle section\ name \rangle$ |
| 83 | <i>insert any</i> | $\rightarrow any$ | | #include |
| 84 | <i>prelangle</i> | $\rightarrow binop$ | | < < not in template |
| 85 | <i>prerangle</i> | $\rightarrow binop$ | | > > not in template |
| 86 | <i>langle prerangle</i> | $\rightarrow cast$ | $L \setminus, P$ | $\langle \rangle$ |
| 87 | $langle \left\{ \begin{array}{l} decl_head \\ int_like \\ exp \end{array} \right\} prerangle$ | $\rightarrow cast$ | | $\langle class\ C \rangle$ |
| 88 | $langle \left\{ \begin{array}{l} decl_head \\ int_like \\ exp \end{array} \right\} comma$ | $\rightarrow langle$ | $L \left\{ \begin{array}{l} D \\ I \\ E \end{array} \right\} C\ opt9$ | $\langle class\ C,$ |
| 89 | <i>template_like exp prelangle</i> | $\rightarrow template_like\ exp\ langle$ | | template <i>a</i> $\langle 100 \rangle$ |
| 90 | <i>template_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ raw_int \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ raw_int \end{array} \right\}$ | $T \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \\ R \end{array} \right\}$ | C::template <i>a</i> () |
| 91 | <i>template_like</i> | $\rightarrow raw_int$ | | template $\langle class\ T \rangle$ |
| 92 | <i>new_like lpar exp rpar</i> | $\rightarrow new_like$ | | new (<i>nothrow</i>) |
| 93 | <i>new_like cast</i> | $\rightarrow exp$ | $N \sqcup C$ | new (int *) |
| †94 | <i>new_like</i> | $\rightarrow new_exp$ | | new <i>C</i> () |
| 95 | <i>new_exp</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ const_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow new_exp$ | $N \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \\ C \end{array} \right\}$ | new const int |
| 96 | <i>new_exp struct_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} exp \\ int_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow new_exp$ | $N \sqcup S \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} E \\ I \end{array} \right\}$ | new struct <i>S</i> |
| 97 | <i>new_exp raw_ubin</i> | $\rightarrow new_exp$ | $N \{ R \}$ | new int *[2] |
| 98 | <i>new_exp</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} lpar \\ exp \end{array} \right\}$ | $E = N \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \end{array} \right\}$ | operator [[]](int) new int (2) |
| †99 | <i>new_exp</i> | $\rightarrow exp$ | | new int ; |
| 100 | <i>ftemplate prelangle</i> | $\rightarrow ftemplate\ langle$ | | <i>make_pair</i> (int , int) |
| 101 | <i>ftemplate</i> | $\rightarrow exp$ | | <i>make_pair</i> (1, 2) |
| 102 | <i>for_like exp</i> | $\rightarrow else_like$ | $F \sqcup E$ | while (1) |
| 103 | <i>raw_ubin const_like</i> | $\rightarrow raw_ubin$ | $RC \setminus \sqcup$ | *const <i>x</i> |
| 104 | <i>raw_ubin</i> | $\rightarrow ubinop$ | | * x |
| 105 | <i>const_like</i> | $\rightarrow int_like$ | | const <i>x</i> |
| 106 | <i>raw_int prelangle</i> | $\rightarrow raw_int\ langle$ | | C \langle |
| 107 | <i>raw_int colcol</i> | $\rightarrow colcol$ | | C:: |
| 108 | <i>raw_int cast</i> | $\rightarrow raw_int$ | | C $\langle class\ T \rangle$ |
| 109 | <i>raw_int lpar</i> | $\rightarrow exp\ lpar$ | | complex (<i>x</i> , <i>y</i>) |
| †110 | <i>raw_int</i> | $\rightarrow int_like$ | | complex <i>z</i> |
| †111 | <i>operator_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} binop \\ unop \\ ubinop \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | $O \left\{ \begin{array}{l} B \\ U \\ U \end{array} \right\}$ | operator + |
| 112 | <i>operator_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} new_like \\ delete_like \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow exp$ | $O \sqcup \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N \\ S \end{array} \right\}$ | operator delete |
| 113 | <i>operator_like comma</i> | $\rightarrow exp$ | | operator , |
| †114 | <i>operator_like</i> | $\rightarrow new_exp$ | | operator char* |
| 115 | <i>typedef_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} int_like \\ cast \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} comma \\ semi \end{array} \right\}$ | $\rightarrow typedef_like\ exp \left\{ \begin{array}{l} comma \\ semi \end{array} \right\}$ | | typedef int <i>I</i> , |

| | | | | |
|------|---|--|--|----------------------------|
| 116 | <i>typedef_like int_like</i> | → <i>typedef_like</i> | $T_{\sqcup}I$ | typedef char |
| †117 | <i>typedef_like exp</i> | → <i>typedef_like</i> | $T_{\sqcup}E^{**}$ | typedef I @[@] (*P) |
| 118 | <i>typedef_like comma</i> | → <i>typedef_like</i> | TC_{\sqcup} | typedef int x, |
| 119 | <i>typedef_like semi</i> | → <i>decl</i> | | typedef int x, y; |
| 120 | <i>typedef_like ubinop</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{cast} \\ \textit{ubinop} \end{array} \right\}$ | → <i>typedef_like</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{cast} \\ \textit{ubinop} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} C = \{U\}C \\ U_2 = \{U_1\}U_2 \end{array} \right\}$ | typedef ** (CPtr) |
| 121 | <i>delete_like lpar rpar</i> | → <i>delete_like</i> | $DL \setminus, R$ | delete[] |
| 122 | <i>delete_like exp</i> | → <i>exp</i> | $D_{\sqcup}E$ | delete p |
| †123 | <i>question exp</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{colon} \\ \textit{base} \end{array} \right\}$ | → <i>binop</i> | | ? <i>x</i> : |
| 124 | <i>begin_arg end_arg</i> | → <i>exp</i> | | ? <i>f()</i> : |
| 125 | <i>any_other end_arg</i> | → <i>end_arg</i> | | @[char*@] |
| | | | | char*@] |

†Notes

Rule 35: The *exp* must not be immediately followed by *lpar*, *exp*, or *cast*.

Rule 48: The *exp* or *int_like* must not be immediately followed by *base*.

Rule 76: The *force* in the *stmt* line becomes *bsp* if CWEAVE has been invoked with the `-f` option.

Rule 78: The *define_like* case calls *make_underlined* on the following scrap.

Rule 94: The *new_like* must not be immediately followed by *lpar*.

Rule 99: The *new_exp* must not be immediately followed by *raw_int*, *struct_like*, or *colcol*.

Rule 110: The *raw_int* must not be immediately followed by *langle*.

Rule 111: The operator after *operator_like* must not be immediately followed by a *binop*.

Rule 114: The *operator_like* must not be immediately followed by *raw_ubin*.

Rule 117: The *exp* must not be immediately followed by *lpar*, *exp*, or *cast*.

Rule 123: The mathness of the *colon* or *base* changes to ‘yes’.

103. Implementing the productions. More specifically, a scrap is a structure consisting of a category *cat* and a **text_pointer** *trans*, which points to the translation in *tok_start*. When C text is to be processed with the grammar above, we form an array *scrap_info* containing the initial scraps. Our production rules have the nice property that the right-hand side is never longer than the left-hand side. Therefore it is convenient to use sequential allocation for the current sequence of scraps. Five pointers are used to manage the parsing:

pp is a pointer into *scrap_info*. We will try to match the category codes *pp-cat*, $(pp + 1)$ -*cat*, ... to the left-hand sides of productions.

scrap_base, *lo_ptr*, *hi_ptr*, and *scrap_ptr* are such that the current sequence of scraps appears in positions *scrap_base* through *lo_ptr* and *hi_ptr* through *scrap_ptr*, inclusive, in the *cat* and *trans* arrays. Scraps located between *scrap_base* and *lo_ptr* have been examined, while those in positions $\geq hi_ptr$ have not yet been looked at by the parsing process.

Initially *scrap_ptr* is set to the position of the final scrap to be parsed, and it doesn't change its value. The parsing process makes sure that $lo_ptr \geq pp + 3$, since productions have as many as four terms, by moving scraps from *hi_ptr* to *lo_ptr*. If there are fewer than $pp + 3$ scraps left, the positions up to $pp + 3$ are filled with blanks that will not match in any productions. Parsing stops when $pp \equiv lo_ptr + 1$ and $hi_ptr \equiv scrap_ptr + 1$.

Since the *scrap* structure will later be used for other purposes, we declare its second element as a union.

⟨Typedef declarations 18⟩ +≡

```
typedef struct {
    eight_bits cat;
    eight_bits mathmess;
    union {
        text_pointer Trans;
        ⟨Rest of trans_plus union 232⟩
    } trans_plus;
} scrap;
typedef scrap *scrap_pointer;
```

104. #define trans trans_plus.Trans /* translation texts of scraps */

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡

```
scrap scrap_info[max_scraps]; /* memory array for scraps */
scrap_pointer scrap_info_end ← scrap_info + max_scraps - 1; /* end of scrap_info */
scrap_pointer pp; /* current position for reducing productions */
scrap_pointer scrap_base; /* beginning of the current scrap sequence */
scrap_pointer scrap_ptr; /* ending of the current scrap sequence */
scrap_pointer lo_ptr; /* last scrap that has been examined */
scrap_pointer hi_ptr; /* first scrap that has not been examined */
scrap_pointer max_scr_ptr; /* largest value assumed by scrap_ptr */
```

105. ⟨Set initial values 20⟩ +≡

```
scrap_base ← scrap_info + 1;
max_scr_ptr ← scrap_ptr ← scrap_info;
```

106. Token lists in *tok_mem* are composed of the following kinds of items for T_EX output.

- Character codes and special codes like *force* and *math_rel* represent themselves;
- *id_flag* + *p* represents `\{identifier p}`;
- *res_flag* + *p* represents `\&\{identifier p}`;
- *section_flag* + *p* represents section name *p*;
- *tok_flag* + *p* represents token list number *p*;
- *inner_tok_flag* + *p* represents token list number *p*, to be translated without line-break controls.

```
#define id_flag 10240 /* signifies an identifier */
#define res_flag 2 * id_flag /* signifies a reserved word */
#define section_flag 3 * id_flag /* signifies a section name */
#define tok_flag 4 * id_flag /* signifies a token list */
#define inner_tok_flag 5 * id_flag /* signifies a token list in '| ... |' */

void print_text(p) /* prints a token list for debugging; not used in main */
    text_pointer p;
{
    token_pointer j; /* index into tok_mem */
    sixteen_bits r; /* remainder of token after the flag has been stripped off */
    if (p ≥ text_ptr) printf("BAD");
    else
        for (j ← *p; j < *(p + 1); j++) {
            r ← *j % id_flag;
            switch (*j / id_flag) {
                case 1: printf("\\\\{");
                    print_id((name_dir + r));
                    printf("}");
                    break; /* id_flag */
                case 2: printf("\\&{");
                    print_id((name_dir + r));
                    printf("}");
                    break; /* res_flag */
                case 3: printf("<");
                    print_section_name((name_dir + r));
                    printf(">");
                    break; /* section_flag */
                case 4: printf("[[%d]]", r);
                    break; /* tok_flag */
                case 5: printf("|[[%d]]|", r);
                    break; /* inner_tok_flag */
                default: ⟨Print token r in symbolic form 107⟩;
            }
        }
    fflush(stdout);
}
```

```

107. ⟨Print token  $r$  in symbolic form 107⟩ ≡
  switch ( $r$ ) {
  case math_rel: printf("\\mathrel{");
    break;
  case big_cancel: printf("[ccancel]");
    break;
  case cancel: printf("[cancel]");
    break;
  case indent: printf("[indent]");
    break;
  case outdent: printf("[outdent]");
    break;
  case backup: printf("[backup]");
    break;
  case opt: printf("[opt]");
    break;
  case break_space: printf("[break]");
    break;
  case force: printf("[force]");
    break;
  case big_force: printf("[fforce]");
    break;
  case preproc_line: printf("[preproc]");
    break;
  case quoted_char:  $j++$ ;
    printf("[%o]", (unsigned) * $j$ );
    break;
  case end_translation: printf("[quit]");
    break;
  case inserted: printf("[inserted]");
    break;
  default: putxchar( $r$ );
  }

```

This code is used in section 106.

108. The production rules listed above are embedded directly into **CWEAVE**, since it is easier to do this than to write an interpretive system that would handle production systems in general. Several macros are defined here so that the program for each production is fairly short.

All of our productions conform to the general notion that some k consecutive scraps starting at some position j are to be replaced by a single scrap of some category c whose translation is composed from the translations of the disappearing scraps. After this production has been applied, the production pointer pp should change by an amount d . Such a production can be represented by the quadruple (j, k, c, d) . For example, the production ‘ $exp\ comma\ exp \rightarrow exp$ ’ would be represented by ‘ $(pp, 3, exp, -2)$ ’; in this case the pointer pp should decrease by 2 after the production has been applied, because some productions with exp in their second or third positions might now match, but no productions have exp in the fourth position of their left-hand sides. Note that the value of d is determined by the whole collection of productions, not by an individual one. The determination of d has been done by hand in each case, based on the full set of productions but not on the grammar of C or on the rules for constructing the initial scraps.

We also attach a serial number to each production, so that additional information is available when debugging. For example, the program below contains the statement ‘ $reduce(pp, 3, exp, -2, 4)$ ’ when it implements the production just mentioned.

Before calling *reduce*, the program should have appended the tokens of the new translation to the *tok_mem* array. We commonly want to append copies of several existing translations, and macros are defined to simplify these common cases. For example, *app2(pp)* will append the translations of two consecutive scraps, *pp-trans* and $(pp + 1)$ -*trans*, to the current token list. If the entire new translation is formed in this way, we write ‘*squash(j, k, c, d, n)*’ instead of ‘*reduce(j, k, c, d, n)*’. For example, ‘*squash(pp, 3, exp, -2, 3)*’ is an abbreviation for ‘*app3(pp); reduce(pp, 3, exp, -2, 3)*’.

A couple more words of explanation: Both *big_app* and *app* append a token (while *big_app1* to *big_app4* append the specified number of scrap translations) to the current token list. The difference between *big_app* and *app* is simply that *big_app* checks whether there can be a conflict between math and non-math tokens, and intercalates a ‘\$’ token if necessary. When in doubt what to use, use *big_app*.

The *mathness* is an attribute of scraps that says whether they are to be printed in a math mode context or not. It is separate from the “part of speech” (the *cat*) because to make each *cat* have a fixed *mathness* (as in the original **WEAVE**) would multiply the number of necessary production rules.

The low two bits (i.e. $mathness \% 4$) control the left boundary. (We need two bits because we allow cases *yes_math*, *no_math* and *maybe_math*, which can go either way.) The next two bits (i.e. $mathness / 4$) control the right boundary. If we combine two scraps and the right boundary of the first has a different *mathness* from the left boundary of the second, we insert a \$ in between. Similarly, if at printing time some irreducible scrap has a *yes_math* boundary the scrap gets preceded or followed by a \$. The left boundary is *maybe_math* if and only if the right boundary is.

The code below is an exact translation of the production rules into C, using such macros, and the reader should have no difficulty understanding the format by comparing the code with the symbolic productions as they were listed earlier.

```
#define no_math 2    /* should be in horizontal mode */
#define yes_math 1   /* should be in math mode */
#define maybe_math 0 /* works in either horizontal or math mode */
#define big_app2(a) big_app1(a); big_app1(a + 1)
#define big_app3(a) big_app2(a); big_app1(a + 2)
#define big_app4(a) big_app3(a); big_app1(a + 3)
#define app(a) *(tok_ptr++) ← a
#define app1(a) *(tok_ptr++) ← tok_flag + (int)((a)-trans - tok_start)
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  int cur_mathness, init_mathness;
```

```

109. void app_str(s)
    char *s;
    {
        while (*s) app_tok(*(s++));
    }
void big_app(a)
    token a;
    {
        if (a == '□' ∨ (a ≥ big_cancel ∧ a ≤ big_force)) /* non-math token */
        {
            if (cur_mathness == maybe_math) init_mathness ← no_math;
            else if (cur_mathness == yes_math) app_str("{}$");
            cur_mathness ← no_math;
        }
        else {
            if (cur_mathness == maybe_math) init_mathness ← yes_math;
            else if (cur_mathness == no_math) app_str("${}");
            cur_mathness ← yes_math;
        }
        app(a);
    }
void big_app1(a)
    scrap_pointer a;
    {
        switch (a-mathness % 4) { /* left boundary */
        case (no_math):
            if (cur_mathness == maybe_math) init_mathness ← no_math;
            else if (cur_mathness == yes_math) app_str("{}$");
            cur_mathness ← a-mathness/4; /* right boundary */
            break;
        case (yes_math):
            if (cur_mathness == maybe_math) init_mathness ← yes_math;
            else if (cur_mathness == no_math) app_str("${}");
            cur_mathness ← a-mathness/4; /* right boundary */
            break;
        case (maybe_math): /* no changes */
            break;
        }
        app(tok_flag + (int)((a)-trans - tok_start));
    }

```

110. Let us consider the big switch for productions now, before looking at its context. We want to design the program so that this switch works, so we might as well not keep ourselves in suspense about exactly what code needs to be provided with a proper environment.

```
#define cat1 (pp + 1)-cat
#define cat2 (pp + 2)-cat
#define cat3 (pp + 3)-cat
#define lhs_not_simple
    (pp-cat ≠ public_like ∧ pp-cat ≠ semi ∧ pp-cat ≠ preangle ∧ pp-cat ≠ prerangle ∧ pp-cat ≠
     template_like ∧ pp-cat ≠ new_like ∧ pp-cat ≠ new_exp ∧ pp-cat ≠ ftemplate ∧ pp-cat ≠
     raw_ubin ∧ pp-cat ≠ const_like ∧ pp-cat ≠ raw_int ∧ pp-cat ≠ operator_like)
/* not a production with left side length 1 */
```

⟨Match a production at *pp*, or increase *pp* if there is no match 110⟩ ≡

```
{
  if (cat1 ≡ end_arg ∧ lhs_not_simple)
    if (pp-cat ≡ begin_arg) squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 124);
    else squash(pp, 2, end_arg, -1, 125);
  else if (cat1 ≡ insert) squash(pp, 2, pp-cat, -2, 0);
  else if (cat2 ≡ insert) squash(pp + 1, 2, (pp + 1)-cat, -1, 0);
  else if (cat3 ≡ insert) squash(pp + 2, 2, (pp + 2)-cat, 0, 0);
  else
    switch (pp-cat) {
      case exp: ⟨Cases for exp 117⟩; break;
      case lpar: ⟨Cases for lpar 118⟩; break;
      case unop: ⟨Cases for unop 119⟩; break;
      case ubinop: ⟨Cases for ubinop 120⟩; break;
      case binop: ⟨Cases for binop 121⟩; break;
      case cast: ⟨Cases for cast 122⟩; break;
      case sizeof_like: ⟨Cases for sizeof_like 123⟩; break;
      case int_like: ⟨Cases for int_like 124⟩; break;
      case public_like: ⟨Cases for public_like 125⟩; break;
      case colcol: ⟨Cases for colcol 126⟩; break;
      case decl_head: ⟨Cases for decl_head 127⟩; break;
      case decl: ⟨Cases for decl 128⟩; break;
      case base: ⟨Cases for base 129⟩; break;
      case struct_like: ⟨Cases for struct_like 130⟩; break;
      case struct_head: ⟨Cases for struct_head 131⟩; break;
      case fn_decl: ⟨Cases for fn_decl 132⟩; break;
      case function: ⟨Cases for function 133⟩; break;
      case lbrace: ⟨Cases for lbrace 134⟩; break;
      case if_like: ⟨Cases for if_like 135⟩; break;
      case else_like: ⟨Cases for else_like 136⟩; break;
      case else_head: ⟨Cases for else_head 137⟩; break;
      case if_clause: ⟨Cases for if_clause 138⟩; break;
      case if_head: ⟨Cases for if_head 139⟩; break;
      case do_like: ⟨Cases for do_like 140⟩; break;
      case case_like: ⟨Cases for case_like 141⟩; break;
      case catch_like: ⟨Cases for catch_like 142⟩; break;
      case tag: ⟨Cases for tag 143⟩; break;
      case stmt: ⟨Cases for stmt 144⟩; break;
      case semi: ⟨Cases for semi 145⟩; break;
      case lproc: ⟨Cases for lproc 146⟩; break;
      case section_scrap: ⟨Cases for section_scrap 147⟩; break;
    }
```

```
case insert: ⟨Cases for insert 148⟩; break;
case prelangle: ⟨Cases for prelangle 149⟩; break;
case prerangle: ⟨Cases for prerangle 150⟩; break;
case langle: ⟨Cases for langle 151⟩; break;
case template_like: ⟨Cases for template_like 152⟩; break;
case new_like: ⟨Cases for new_like 153⟩; break;
case new_exp: ⟨Cases for new_exp 154⟩; break;
case ftemplate: ⟨Cases for ftemplate 155⟩; break;
case for_like: ⟨Cases for for_like 156⟩; break;
case raw_ubin: ⟨Cases for raw_ubin 157⟩; break;
case const_like: ⟨Cases for const_like 158⟩; break;
case raw_int: ⟨Cases for raw_int 159⟩; break;
case operator_like: ⟨Cases for operator_like 160⟩; break;
case typedef_like: ⟨Cases for typedef_like 161⟩; break;
case delete_like: ⟨Cases for delete_like 162⟩; break;
case question: ⟨Cases for question 163⟩; break;
}
pp++; /* if no match was found, we move to the right */
}
```

This code is used in section 166.

111. In C, new specifier names can be defined via **typedef**, and we want to make the parser recognize future occurrences of the identifier thus defined as specifiers. This is done by the procedure *make_reserved*, which changes the *ilk* of the relevant identifier.

We first need a procedure to recursively seek the first identifier in a token list, because the identifier might be enclosed in parentheses, as when one defines a function returning a pointer.

If the first identifier found is a keyword like ‘**case**’, we return the special value *case_found*; this prevents underlining of identifiers in case labels.

If the first identifier is the keyword ‘**operator**’, we give up; users who want to index definitions of overloaded C++ operators should say, for example, ‘`@!@^\&{operator} $+{=} $@>`’ (or, more properly alphebetized, ‘`@!@:operator+=}\&{operator} $+{=} $@>`’).

```
#define no_ident_found (token_pointer) 0 /* distinct from any identifier token */
#define case_found (token_pointer) 1 /* likewise */
#define operator_found (token_pointer) 2 /* likewise */

token_pointer find_first_ident(p)
    text_pointer p;
{
    token_pointer q; /* token to be returned */
    token_pointer j; /* token being looked at */
    sixteen_bits r; /* remainder of token after the flag has been stripped off */
    if (p ≥ text_ptr) confusion("find_first_ident");
    for (j ← *p; j < *(p + 1); j++) {
        r ← *j % id_flag;
        switch (*j/id_flag) {
            case 2: /* res_flag */
                if (name_dir[r].ilk ≡ case_like) return case_found;
                if (name_dir[r].ilk ≡ operator_like) return operator_found;
                if (name_dir[r].ilk ≠ raw_int) break;
            case 1: return j;
            case 4: case 5: /* tok_flag or inner_tok_flag */
                if ((q ← find_first_ident(tok_start + r)) ≠ no_ident_found) return q;
            default: ; /* char, section_flag, fall thru: move on to next token */
                if (*j ≡ inserted) return no_ident_found; /* ignore inserts */
                else if (*j ≡ qualifier) j++; /* bypass namespace qualifier */
        }
    }
    return no_ident_found;
}
```


112. The scraps currently being parsed must be inspected for any occurrence of the identifier that we're making reserved; hence the **for** loop below.

```

void make_reserved(p)    /* make the first identifier in p-trans like int */
    scrap_pointer p;
{
    sixteen_bits tok_value;    /* the name of this identifier, plus its flag */
    token_pointer tok_loc;    /* pointer to tok_value */
    if ((tok_loc ← find_first_ident(p-trans)) ≤ operator_found) return;    /* this should not happen */
    tok_value ← *tok_loc;
    for ( ; p ≤ scrap_ptr; p ≡ lo_ptr ? p ← hi_ptr : p++) {
        if (p-cat ≡ exp) {
            if (**(p-trans) ≡ tok_value) {
                p-cat ← raw_int;
                **(p-trans) ← tok_value % id_flag + res_flag;
            }
        }
    }
    (name_dir + (sixteen_bits)(tok_value % id_flag))-ilk ← raw_int;
    *tok_loc ← tok_value % id_flag + res_flag;
}

```

113. In the following situations we want to mark the occurrence of an identifier as a definition: when *make_reserved* is just about to be used; after a specifier, as in **char** ***argv*; before a colon, as in *found*:; and in the declaration of a function, as in *main*(){...;}. This is accomplished by the invocation of *make_underlined* at appropriate times. Notice that, in the declaration of a function, we find out that the identifier is being defined only after it has been swallowed up by an *exp*.

```

void make_underlined(p)    /* underline the entry for the first identifier in p-trans */
    scrap_pointer p;
{
    token_pointer tok_loc;    /* where the first identifier appears */
    if ((tok_loc ← find_first_ident(p-trans)) ≤ operator_found) return;
    /* this happens, for example, in case found: */
    xref_switch ← def_flag;
    underline_xref(*tok_loc % id_flag + name_dir);
}

```

114. We cannot use *new_xref* to underline a cross-reference at this point because this would just make a new cross-reference at the end of the list. We actually have to search through the list for the existing cross-reference.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
void *underline_xref*();

```

115. void underline_xref(p)
    name_pointer p;
    {
    xref_pointer q ← (xref_pointer) p-xref;    /* pointer to cross-reference being examined */
    xref_pointer r;    /* temporary pointer for permuting cross-references */
    sixteen_bits m;    /* cross-reference value to be installed */
    sixteen_bits n;    /* cross-reference value being examined */
    if (no_xref) return;
    m ← section_count + xref_switch;
    while (q ≠ xmem) {
        n ← q-num;
        if (n ≡ m) return;
        else if (m ≡ n + def_flag) {
            q-num ← m;
            return;
        }
        else if (n ≥ def_flag ∧ n < m) break;
        q ← q-xlink;
    }
    ⟨Insert new cross-reference at q, not at beginning of list 116⟩;
    }

```

116. We get to this section only when the identifier is one letter long, so it didn't get a non-underlined entry during phase one. But it may have got some explicitly underlined entries in later sections, so in order to preserve the numerical order of the entries in the index, we have to insert the new cross-reference not at the beginning of the list (namely, at $p\text{-xref}$), but rather right before q .

```

⟨Insert new cross-reference at q, not at beginning of list 116⟩ ≡
    append_xref(0);    /* this number doesn't matter */
    xref_ptr-xlink ← (xref_pointer) p-xref;
    r ← xref_ptr;
    p-xref ← (char *) xref_ptr;
    while (r-xlink ≠ q) {
        r-num ← r-xlink-num;
        r ← r-xlink;
    }
    r-num ← m;    /* everything from q on is left undisturbed */

```

This code is used in section 115.

117. Now comes the code that tries to match each production starting with a particular type of scrap. Whenever a match is discovered, the *squash* or *reduce* macro will cause the appropriate action to be performed, followed by *goto found*.

```

⟨Cases for exp 117⟩ ≡
  if (cat1 ≡ lbrace ∨ cat1 ≡ int_like ∨ cat1 ≡ decl) {
    make_underlined(pp);
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app(indent);
    app(indent);
    reduce(pp, 1, fn_decl, 0, 1);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ unop) squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 2);
  else if ((cat1 ≡ binop ∨ cat1 ≡ ubinop) ∧ cat2 ≡ exp) squash(pp, 3, exp, -2, 3);
  else if (cat1 ≡ comma ∧ cat2 ≡ exp) {
    big_app2(pp);
    app(opt);
    app('9');
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    reduce(pp, 3, exp, -2, 4);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ lpar ∧ cat2 ≡ rpar ∧ cat3 ≡ colon) squash(pp + 3, 1, base, 0, 5);
  else if (cat1 ≡ cast ∧ cat2 ≡ colon) squash(pp + 2, 1, base, 0, 5);
  else if (cat1 ≡ semi) squash(pp, 2, stmt, -1, 6);
  else if (cat1 ≡ colon) {
    make_underlined(pp);
    squash(pp, 2, tag, -1, 7);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ rbrace) squash(pp, 1, stmt, -1, 8);
  else if (cat1 ≡ lpar ∧ cat2 ≡ rpar ∧ (cat3 ≡ const_like ∨ cat3 ≡ case_like)) {
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 3);
    reduce(pp + 2, 2, rpar, 0, 9);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ cast ∧ (cat2 ≡ const_like ∨ cat2 ≡ case_like)) {
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    reduce(pp + 1, 2, cast, 0, 9);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ exp ∨ cat1 ≡ cast) squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 10);

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

118.  ⟨ Cases for lpar 118 ⟩ ≡
  if ((cat1 ≡ exp ∨ cat1 ≡ ubinop) ∧ cat2 ≡ rpar) squash(pp, 3, exp, -2, 11);
  else if (cat1 ≡ rpar) {
    big_app1(pp);
    app('\\');
    app(' ');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 12);
  }
  else if ((cat1 ≡ decl_head ∨ cat1 ≡ int_like ∨ cat1 ≡ cast) ∧ cat2 ≡ rpar) squash(pp, 3, cast, -2, 13);
  else if ((cat1 ≡ decl_head ∨ cat1 ≡ int_like ∨ cat1 ≡ exp) ∧ cat2 ≡ comma) {
    big_app3(pp);
    app(opt);
    app('9');
    reduce(pp, 3, lpar, -1, 14);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ stmt ∨ cat1 ≡ decl) {
    big_app2(pp);
    big_app('□');
    reduce(pp, 2, lpar, -1, 15);
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

119.  ⟨ Cases for unop 119 ⟩ ≡
  if (cat1 ≡ exp ∨ cat1 ≡ int_like) squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 16);

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

120.  ⟨ Cases for ubinop 120 ⟩ ≡
  if (cat1 ≡ cast ∧ cat2 ≡ rpar) {
    big_app('{');
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('}');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, cast, -2, 17);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ exp ∨ cat1 ≡ int_like) {
    big_app('{');
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('}');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, cat1, -2, 18);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ binop) {
    big_app(math_rel);
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('{');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    big_app('}');
    big_app('}');
    reduce(pp, 2, binop, -1, 19);
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

121. $\langle \text{Cases for } binop \ 121 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $cat1 \equiv binop$ ) {
   $big\_app(math\_rel)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \{ ')$ ;
   $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \} ')$ ;
   $big\_app(' \{ ')$ ;
   $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \} ')$ ;
   $big\_app(' \} ')$ ;
   $reduce(pp, 2, binop, -1, 20)$ ;
}

```

This code is used in section 110.

122. $\langle \text{Cases for } cast \ 122 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $cat1 \equiv lpar$ )  $squash(pp, 2, lpar, -1, 21)$ ;
else if ( $cat1 \equiv exp$ ) {
   $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \sqcup ')$ ;
   $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
   $reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 21)$ ;
}
else if ( $cat1 \equiv semi$ )  $squash(pp, 1, exp, -2, 22)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

123. $\langle \text{Cases for } sizeof_like \ 123 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $cat1 \equiv cast$ )  $squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 23)$ ;
else if ( $cat1 \equiv exp$ ) {
   $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \sqcup ')$ ;
   $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
   $reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 24)$ ;
}

```

This code is used in section 110.

124. $\langle \text{Cases for } int_like \ 124 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $cat1 \equiv int\_like \vee cat1 \equiv struct\_like$ ) {
   $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \sqcup ')$ ;
   $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
   $reduce(pp, 2, cat1, -2, 25)$ ;
}
else if ( $cat1 \equiv exp \wedge (cat2 \equiv raw\_int \vee cat2 \equiv struct\_like)$ )  $squash(pp, 2, int\_like, -2, 26)$ ;
else if ( $cat1 \equiv exp \vee cat1 \equiv ubinop \vee cat1 \equiv colon$ ) {
   $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
   $big\_app(' \sqcup ')$ ;
   $reduce(pp, 1, decl\_head, -1, 27)$ ;
}
else if ( $cat1 \equiv semi \vee cat1 \equiv binop$ )  $squash(pp, 1, decl\_head, 0, 28)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

125. $\langle \text{Cases for } public_like\ 125 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv colon$) *squash*($pp, 2, tag, -1, 29$);
else *squash*($pp, 1, int_like, -2, 30$);

This code is used in section 110.

126. $\langle \text{Cases for } colcol\ 126 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv exp \vee cat1 \equiv int_like$) {
app(*qualifier*);
squash($pp, 2, cat1, -2, 31$);
} **else if** ($cat1 \equiv colcol$) *squash*($pp, 2, colcol, -1, 32$);

This code is used in section 110.

127. $\langle \text{Cases for } decl_head\ 127 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv comma$) {
big_app2(pp);
big_app('␣');
reduce($pp, 2, decl_head, -1, 33$);
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv ubinop$) {
big_app1(pp);
big_app('{');
big_app1($pp + 1$);
big_app('}');
reduce($pp, 2, decl_head, -1, 34$);
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv exp \wedge cat2 \neq lpar \wedge cat2 \neq exp \wedge cat2 \neq cast$) {
make_underlined($pp + 1$);
squash($pp, 2, decl_head, -1, 35$);
}
else if ($(cat1 \equiv binop \vee cat1 \equiv colon) \wedge cat2 \equiv exp \wedge (cat3 \equiv comma \vee cat3 \equiv semi \vee cat3 \equiv rpar)$)
squash($pp, 3, decl_head, -1, 36$);
else if ($cat1 \equiv cast$) *squash*($pp, 2, decl_head, -1, 37$);
else if ($cat1 \equiv lbrace \vee cat1 \equiv int_like \vee cat1 \equiv decl$) {
big_app1(pp);
big_app(*indent*);
app(*indent*);
reduce($pp, 1, fn_decl, 0, 38$);
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv semi$) *squash*($pp, 2, decl, -1, 39$);

This code is used in section 110.

```

128.  ⟨ Cases for decl 128 ⟩ ≡
if (cat1 ≡ decl) {
  big_app1(pp);
  big_app(force);
  big_app1(pp + 1);
  reduce(pp, 2, decl, -1, 40);
}
else if (cat1 ≡ stmt ∨ cat1 ≡ function) {
  big_app1(pp);
  big_app(big_force);
  big_app1(pp + 1);
  reduce(pp, 2, cat1, -1, 41);
}

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

129.  ⟨ Cases for base 129 ⟩ ≡
if (cat1 ≡ int_like ∨ cat1 ≡ exp) {
  if (cat2 ≡ comma) {
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('␣');
    big_app2(pp + 1);
    app(opt);
    app('9');
    reduce(pp, 3, base, 0, 42);
  }
  else if (cat2 ≡ lbrace) {
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('␣');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    big_app('␣');
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    reduce(pp, 3, lbrace, -2, 43);
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

130.  $\langle \text{Cases for } struct\_like\ 130 \rangle \equiv$ 
  if ( $cat1 \equiv lbrace$ ) {
     $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
     $big\_app(' \_')$ ;
     $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
     $reduce(pp, 2, struct\_head, 0, 44)$ ;
  }
  else if ( $cat1 \equiv exp \vee cat1 \equiv int\_like$ ) {
    if ( $cat2 \equiv lbrace \vee cat2 \equiv semi$ ) {
       $make\_underlined(pp + 1)$ ;
       $make\_reserved(pp + 1)$ ;
       $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
       $big\_app(' \_')$ ;
       $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
      if ( $cat2 \equiv semi$ )  $reduce(pp, 2, decl\_head, 0, 45)$ ;
      else {
         $big\_app(' \_')$ ;
         $big\_app1(pp + 2)$ ;
         $reduce(pp, 3, struct\_head, 0, 46)$ ;
      }
    }
    else if ( $cat2 \equiv colon$ )  $squash(pp + 2, 1, base, 2, 47)$ ;
    else if ( $cat2 \neq base$ ) {
       $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
       $big\_app(' \_')$ ;
       $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
       $reduce(pp, 2, int\_like, -2, 48)$ ;
    }
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

131.  $\langle \text{Cases for } struct\_head\ 131 \rangle \equiv$ 
  if ( $(cat1 \equiv decl \vee cat1 \equiv stmt \vee cat1 \equiv function) \wedge cat2 \equiv rbrace$ ) {
     $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
     $big\_app(indent)$ ;
     $big\_app(force)$ ;
     $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
     $big\_app(outdent)$ ;
     $big\_app(force)$ ;
     $big\_app1(pp + 2)$ ;
     $reduce(pp, 3, int\_like, -2, 49)$ ;
  }
  else if ( $cat1 \equiv rbrace$ ) {
     $big\_app1(pp)$ ;
     $app\_str("\\,")$ ;
     $big\_app1(pp + 1)$ ;
     $reduce(pp, 2, int\_like, -2, 50)$ ;
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

132. $\langle \text{Cases for } fn_decl \text{ 132} \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv decl$) {
 $big_app1(pp)$;
 $big_app(force)$;
 $big_app1(pp + 1)$;
 $reduce(pp, 2, fn_decl, 0, 51)$;
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv stmt$) {
 $big_app1(pp)$;
 $app(outdent)$;
 $app(outdent)$;
 $big_app(force)$;
 $big_app1(pp + 1)$;
 $reduce(pp, 2, function, -1, 52)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

133. $\langle \text{Cases for } function \text{ 133} \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv function \vee cat1 \equiv decl \vee cat1 \equiv stmt$) {
 $big_app1(pp)$;
 $big_app(big_force)$;
 $big_app1(pp + 1)$;
 $reduce(pp, 2, cat1, -1, 53)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

134. $\langle \text{Cases for } lbrace \text{ 134} \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv rbrace$) {
 $big_app1(pp)$;
 $app('\ \backslash')$;
 $app(',')$;
 $big_app1(pp + 1)$;
 $reduce(pp, 2, stmt, -1, 54)$;
}
else if ($((cat1 \equiv stmt \vee cat1 \equiv decl \vee cat1 \equiv function) \wedge cat2 \equiv rbrace)$) {
 $big_app(force)$;
 $big_app1(pp)$;
 $big_app(indent)$;
 $big_app(force)$;
 $big_app1(pp + 1)$;
 $big_app(force)$;
 $big_app(backup)$;
 $big_app1(pp + 2)$;
 $big_app(outdent)$;
 $big_app(force)$;
 $reduce(pp, 3, stmt, -1, 55)$;
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv exp$) {
 if ($cat2 \equiv rbrace$) $squash(pp, 3, exp, -2, 56)$;
 else if ($cat2 \equiv comma \wedge cat3 \equiv rbrace$) $squash(pp, 4, exp, -2, 56)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

135. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{if_like} \ 135 \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\text{'_ '})$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp} + 1)$;
 $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{if_clause}, 0, 57)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

136. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{else_like} \ 136 \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{colon}$) $\textit{squash}(\textit{pp} + 1, 1, \textit{base}, 1, 58)$;
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{lbrace}$) $\textit{squash}(\textit{pp}, 1, \textit{else_head}, 0, 59)$;
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{stmt}$) {
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{force})$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{indent})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{break_space})$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp} + 1)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{outdent})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{force})$;
 $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{stmt}, -1, 60)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

137. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{else_head} \ 137 \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{stmt} \vee \textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp}$) {
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{force})$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{break_space})$;
 $\textit{app}(\textit{noop})$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{cancel})$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(\textit{pp} + 1)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(\textit{force})$;
 $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{stmt}, -1, 61)$;
}

This code is used in section 110.

138. $\langle \text{Cases for } if_clause\ 138 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv lbrace$) *squash*($pp, 1, if_head, 0, 62$);
else if ($cat1 \equiv stmt$) {
 if ($cat2 \equiv else_like$) {
 big_app(*force*);
 big_app1(pp);
 big_app(*indent*);
 big_app(*break_space*);
 big_app1($pp + 1$);
 big_app(*outdent*);
 big_app(*force*);
 big_app1($pp + 2$);
 if ($cat3 \equiv if_like$) {
 big_app('␣');
 big_app1($pp + 3$);
 reduce($pp, 4, if_like, 0, 63$);
 } **else** *reduce*($pp, 3, else_like, 0, 64$);
 }
 else *squash*($pp, 1, else_like, 0, 65$);
}

This code is used in section 110.

139. $\langle \text{Cases for } if_head\ 139 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv stmt \vee cat1 \equiv exp$) {
 if ($cat2 \equiv else_like$) {
 big_app(*force*);
 big_app1(pp);
 big_app(*break_space*);
 app(*noop*);
 big_app(*cancel*);
 big_app1($pp + 1$);
 big_app(*force*);
 big_app1($pp + 2$);
 if ($cat3 \equiv if_like$) {
 big_app('␣');
 big_app1($pp + 3$);
 reduce($pp, 4, if_like, 0, 66$);
 } **else** *reduce*($pp, 3, else_like, 0, 67$);
 }
 else *squash*($pp, 1, else_head, 0, 68$);
}

This code is used in section 110.

140. $\langle \text{Cases for } do_like\ 140 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv stmt \wedge cat2 \equiv else_like \wedge cat3 \equiv semi$) {
big_app1 (*pp*);
big_app (*break_space*);
app (*noop*);
big_app (*cancel*);
big_app1 (*pp* + 1);
big_app (*cancel*);
app (*noop*);
big_app (*break_space*);
big_app2 (*pp* + 2);
reduce (*pp*, 4, *stmt*, -1, 69);
}

This code is used in section 110.

141. $\langle \text{Cases for } case_like\ 141 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv semi$) *squash* (*pp*, 2, *stmt*, -1, 70);
else if ($cat1 \equiv colon$) *squash* (*pp*, 2, *tag*, -1, 71);
else if ($cat1 \equiv exp$) {
big_app1 (*pp*);
big_app (' \sqcup ');
big_app1 (*pp* + 1);
reduce (*pp*, 2, *exp*, -2, 72);
}

This code is used in section 110.

142. $\langle \text{Cases for } catch_like\ 142 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv cast \vee cat1 \equiv exp$) {
big_app2 (*pp*);
big_app (*indent*);
big_app (*indent*);
reduce (*pp*, 2, *fn_decl*, 0, 73);
}

This code is used in section 110.

143. $\langle \text{Cases for } tag\ 143 \rangle \equiv$
if ($cat1 \equiv tag$) {
big_app1 (*pp*);
big_app (*break_space*);
big_app1 (*pp* + 1);
reduce (*pp*, 2, *tag*, -1, 74);
}
else if ($cat1 \equiv stmt \vee cat1 \equiv decl \vee cat1 \equiv function$) {
big_app (*force*);
big_app (*backup*);
big_app1 (*pp*);
big_app (*break_space*);
big_app1 (*pp* + 1);
reduce (*pp*, 2, *cat1*, -1, 75);
}

This code is used in section 110.

144. The user can decide at run-time whether short statements should be grouped together on the same line.

```
#define force_lines flags['f'] /* should each statement be on its own line? */
⟨Cases for stmt 144⟩ ≡
if (cat1 ≡ stmt ∨ cat1 ≡ decl ∨ cat1 ≡ function) {
    big_app1(pp);
    if (cat1 ≡ function) big_app(big_force);
    else if (cat1 ≡ decl) big_app(big_force);
    else if (force_lines) big_app(force);
    else big_app(break_space);
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, cat1, -1, 76);
}
```

This code is used in section 110.

145. ⟨Cases for semi 145⟩ ≡

```
big_app('␣');
big_app1(pp);
reduce(pp, 1, stmt, -1, 77);
```

This code is used in section 110.

146. ⟨Cases for lproc 146⟩ ≡

```
if (cat1 ≡ define_like) make_underlined(pp + 2);
if (cat1 ≡ else_like ∨ cat1 ≡ if_like ∨ cat1 ≡ define_like) squash(pp, 2, lproc, 0, 78);
else if (cat1 ≡ rproc) {
    app(inserted);
    big_app2(pp);
    reduce(pp, 2, insert, -1, 79);
}
else if (cat1 ≡ exp ∨ cat1 ≡ function) {
    if (cat2 ≡ rproc) {
        app(inserted);
        big_app1(pp);
        big_app('␣');
        big_app2(pp + 1);
        reduce(pp, 3, insert, -1, 80);
    }
    else if (cat2 ≡ exp ∧ cat3 ≡ rproc ∧ cat1 ≡ exp) {
        app(inserted);
        big_app1(pp);
        big_app('␣');
        big_app1(pp + 1);
        app_str("␣\\5");
        big_app2(pp + 2);
        reduce(pp, 4, insert, -1, 80);
    }
}
```

This code is used in section 110.

147. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{section_scrap} \ 147 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{semi}$ ) {
   $\textit{big\_app2}(\textit{pp})$ ;
   $\textit{big\_app}(\textit{force})$ ;
   $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{stmt}, -2, 81)$ ;
}
else  $\textit{squash}(\textit{pp}, 1, \textit{exp}, -2, 82)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

148. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{insert} \ 148 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $\textit{cat1}$ )  $\textit{squash}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{cat1}, 0, 83)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

149. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{prelangle} \ 149 \rangle \equiv$

```

 $\textit{init\_mathness} \leftarrow \textit{cur\_mathness} \leftarrow \textit{yes\_math}$ ;
 $\textit{app}(\text{'<'})$ ;
 $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 1, \textit{binop}, -2, 84)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

150. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{prerangle} \ 150 \rangle \equiv$

```

 $\textit{init\_mathness} \leftarrow \textit{cur\_mathness} \leftarrow \textit{yes\_math}$ ;
 $\textit{app}(\text{'>'})$ ;
 $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 1, \textit{binop}, -2, 85)$ ;

```

This code is used in section 110.

151. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{langle} \ 151 \rangle \equiv$

```

if ( $\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{prerangle}$ ) {
   $\textit{big\_app1}(\textit{pp})$ ;
   $\textit{app}(\text{'\\'})$ ;
   $\textit{app}(\text{' '})$ ;
   $\textit{big\_app1}(\textit{pp} + 1)$ ;
   $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 2, \textit{cast}, -1, 86)$ ;
}
else if ( $\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{decl\_head} \vee \textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{int\_like} \vee \textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp}$ ) {
  if ( $\textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{prerangle}$ )  $\textit{squash}(\textit{pp}, 3, \textit{cast}, -1, 87)$ ;
  else if ( $\textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{comma}$ ) {
     $\textit{big\_app3}(\textit{pp})$ ;
     $\textit{app}(\textit{opt})$ ;
     $\textit{app}(\text{'9'})$ ;
     $\textit{reduce}(\textit{pp}, 3, \textit{langle}, 0, 88)$ ;
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 110.

152. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{template_like} \text{ 152} \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp} \wedge \textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{prelangle}$) $\textit{squash}(pp + 2, 1, \textit{langl}, 2, 89)$;
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp} \vee \textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{raw_int}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 1)$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 2, \textit{cat1}, -2, 90)$;
} **else** $\textit{squash}(pp, 1, \textit{raw_int}, 0, 91)$;

This code is used in section 110.

153. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{new_like} \text{ 153} \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{lpar} \wedge \textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{exp} \wedge \textit{cat3} \equiv \textit{rpar}$) $\textit{squash}(pp, 4, \textit{new_like}, 0, 92)$;
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{cast}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 1)$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 2, \textit{exp}, -2, 93)$;
}
else if ($\textit{cat1} \neq \textit{lpar}$) $\textit{squash}(pp, 1, \textit{new_exp}, 0, 94)$;

This code is used in section 110.

154. $\langle \text{Cases for } \textit{new_exp} \text{ 154} \rangle \equiv$
if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{int_like} \vee \textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{const_like}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 1)$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 2, \textit{new_exp}, 0, 95)$;
}
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{struct_like} \wedge (\textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{exp} \vee \textit{cat2} \equiv \textit{int_like})$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 1)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 2)$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 3, \textit{new_exp}, 0, 96)$;
}
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{raw_ubin}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \{')$;
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp + 1)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \}')$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 2, \textit{new_exp}, 0, 97)$;
}
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{lpar}$) $\textit{squash}(pp, 1, \textit{exp}, -2, 98)$;
else if ($\textit{cat1} \equiv \textit{exp}$) {
 $\textit{big_app1}(pp)$;
 $\textit{big_app}(' \sqcup')$;
 $\textit{reduce}(pp, 1, \textit{exp}, -2, 98)$;
}
else if ($\textit{cat1} \neq \textit{raw_int} \wedge \textit{cat1} \neq \textit{struct_like} \wedge \textit{cat1} \neq \textit{colcol}$) $\textit{squash}(pp, 1, \textit{exp}, -2, 99)$;

This code is used in section 110.

155. \langle Cases for *ftemplate* 155 $\rangle \equiv$
if (*cat1* \equiv *prelangle*) *squash*(*pp* + 1, 1, *langle*, 1, 100);
else *squash*(*pp*, 1, *exp*, -2, 101);

This code is used in section 110.

156. \langle Cases for *for.like* 156 $\rangle \equiv$
if (*cat1* \equiv *exp*) {
big_app1(*pp*);
big_app('□');
big_app1(*pp* + 1);
reduce(*pp*, 2, *else.like*, -2, 102);
}

This code is used in section 110.

157. \langle Cases for *raw_ubin* 157 $\rangle \equiv$
if (*cat1* \equiv *const.like*) {
big_app2(*pp*);
app_str("\\□");
reduce(*pp*, 2, *raw_ubin*, 0, 103);
}
else *squash*(*pp*, 1, *ubinop*, -2, 104);

This code is used in section 110.

158. \langle Cases for *const.like* 158 $\rangle \equiv$
squash(*pp*, 1, *int.like*, -2, 105);

This code is used in section 110.

159. \langle Cases for *raw_int* 159 $\rangle \equiv$
if (*cat1* \equiv *prelangle*) *squash*(*pp* + 1, 1, *langle*, 1, 106);
else if (*cat1* \equiv *colcol*) *squash*(*pp*, 2, *colcol*, -1, 107);
else if (*cat1* \equiv *cast*) *squash*(*pp*, 2, *raw_int*, 0, 108);
else if (*cat1* \equiv *lpar*) *squash*(*pp*, 1, *exp*, -2, 109);
else if (*cat1* \neq *langle*) *squash*(*pp*, 1, *int.like*, -3, 110);

This code is used in section 110.


```

160.  ⟨ Cases for operator_like 160 ⟩ ≡
  if (cat1 ≡ binop ∨ cat1 ≡ unop ∨ cat1 ≡ ubinop) {
    if (cat2 ≡ binop) break;
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('{'');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    big_app('}');
    reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 111);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ new_like ∨ cat1 ≡ delete_like) {
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 112);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ comma) squash(pp, 2, exp, -2, 113);
  else if (cat1 ≠ raw_ubin) squash(pp, 1, new_exp, 0, 114);

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

161.  ⟨ Cases for typedef_like 161 ⟩ ≡
  if ((cat1 ≡ int_like ∨ cat1 ≡ cast) ∧ (cat2 ≡ comma ∨ cat2 ≡ semi)) squash(pp + 1, 1, exp, -1, 115);
  else if (cat1 ≡ int_like) {
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, typedef_like, 0, 116);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ exp ∧ cat2 ≠ lpar ∧ cat2 ≠ exp ∧ cat2 ≠ cast) {
    make_underlined(pp + 1);
    make_reserved(pp + 1);
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, typedef_like, 0, 117);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ comma) {
    big_app2(pp);
    big_app('□');
    reduce(pp, 2, typedef_like, 0, 118);
  }
  else if (cat1 ≡ semi) squash(pp, 2, decl, -1, 119);
  else if (cat1 ≡ ubinop ∧ (cat2 ≡ ubinop ∨ cat2 ≡ cast)) {
    big_app('{');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    big_app('}');
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    reduce(pp + 1, 2, cat2, 0, 120);
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

162.  $\langle$  Cases for delete_like 162  $\rangle \equiv$ 
  if (cat1  $\equiv$  lpar  $\wedge$  cat2  $\equiv$  rpar) {
    big_app2(pp);
    app('\\');
    app(' ');
    big_app1(pp + 2);
    reduce(pp, 3, delete_like, 0, 121);
  }
  else if (cat1  $\equiv$  exp) {
    big_app1(pp);
    big_app('□');
    big_app1(pp + 1);
    reduce(pp, 2, exp, -2, 122);
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

```

163.  $\langle$  Cases for question 163  $\rangle \equiv$ 
  if (cat1  $\equiv$  exp  $\wedge$  (cat2  $\equiv$  colon  $\vee$  cat2  $\equiv$  base)) {
    (pp + 2)-mathness  $\leftarrow$  5 * yes_math; /* this colon should be in math mode */
    squash(pp, 3, binop, -2, 123);
  }

```

This code is used in section 110.

164. Now here's the *reduce* procedure used in our code for productions.

The '*freeze_text*' macro is used to give official status to a token list. Before saying *freeze_text*, items are appended to the current token list, and we know that the eventual number of this token list will be the current value of *text_ptr*. But no list of that number really exists as yet, because no ending point for the current list has been stored in the *tok_start* array. After saying *freeze_text*, the old current token list becomes legitimate, and its number is the current value of *text_ptr* - 1 since *text_ptr* has been increased. The new current token list is empty and ready to be appended to. Note that *freeze_text* does not check to see that *text_ptr* hasn't gotten too large, since it is assumed that this test was done beforehand.

```
#define freeze_text *(++text_ptr) ← tok_ptr
void reduce(j, k, c, d, n)
  scrap_pointer j;
  eight_bits c;
  short k, d, n;
{
  scrap_pointer i, i1;    /* pointers into scrap memory */
  j→cat ← c;
  j→trans ← text_ptr;
  j→mathness ← 4 * cur_mathness + init_mathness;
  freeze_text;
  if (k > 1) {
    for (i ← j + k, i1 ← j + 1; i ≤ lo_ptr; i++, i1++) {
      i1→cat ← i→cat;
      i1→trans ← i→trans;
      i1→mathness ← i→mathness;
    }
    lo_ptr ← lo_ptr - k + 1;
  }
  pp ← (pp + d < scrap_base ? scrap_base : pp + d);
  ⟨Print a snapshot of the scrap list if debugging 169⟩;
  pp--;    /* we next say pp++ */
}
```

165. Here's the *squash* procedure, which takes advantage of the simplification that occurs when $k \equiv 1$.

```
void squash(j, k, c, d, n)
  scrap_pointer j;
  eight_bits c;
  short k, d, n;
{
  scrap_pointer i;    /* pointers into scrap memory */
  if (k ≡ 1) {
    j→cat ← c;
    pp ← (pp + d < scrap_base ? scrap_base : pp + d);
    ⟨Print a snapshot of the scrap list if debugging 169⟩;
    pp--;    /* we next say pp++ */
    return;
  }
  for (i ← j; i < j + k; i++) big_app1(i);
  reduce(j, k, c, d, n);
}
```

166. And here now is the code that applies productions as long as possible. Before applying the production mechanism, we must make sure it has good input (at least four scraps, the length of the lhs of the longest rules), and that there is enough room in the memory arrays to hold the appended tokens and texts. Here we use a very conservative test; it's more important to make sure the program will still work if we change the production rules (within reason) than to squeeze the last bit of space from the memory arrays.

```
#define safe_tok_incr 20
#define safe_text_incr 10
#define safe_scrap_incr 10
⟨Reduce the scraps using the productions until no more rules apply 166⟩ ≡
while (1) {
  ⟨Make sure the entries pp through pp + 3 of cat are defined 167⟩;
  if (tok_ptr + safe_tok_incr > tok_mem_end) {
    if (tok_ptr > max_tok_ptr) max_tok_ptr ← tok_ptr;
    overflow("token");
  }
  if (text_ptr + safe_text_incr > tok_start_end) {
    if (text_ptr > max_text_ptr) max_text_ptr ← text_ptr;
    overflow("text");
  }
  if (pp > lo_ptr) break;
  init_mathness ← cur_mathness ← maybe_math;
  ⟨Match a production at pp, or increase pp if there is no match 110⟩;
}
```

This code is used in section 170.

167. If we get to the end of the scrap list, category codes equal to zero are stored, since zero does not match anything in a production.

```
⟨Make sure the entries pp through pp + 3 of cat are defined 167⟩ ≡
if (lo_ptr < pp + 3) {
  while (hi_ptr ≤ scrap_ptr ∧ lo_ptr ≠ pp + 3) {
    (++lo_ptr)→cat ← hi_ptr→cat;
    lo_ptr→mathness ← (hi_ptr)→mathness;
    lo_ptr→trans ← (hi_ptr++)→trans;
  }
  for (i ← lo_ptr + 1; i ≤ pp + 3; i++) i→cat ← 0;
}
```

This code is used in section 166.

168. If CWEAVE is being run in debugging mode, the production numbers and current stack categories will be printed out when *tracing* is set to 2; a sequence of two or more irreducible scraps will be printed out when *tracing* is set to 1.

```
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
int tracing; /* can be used to show parsing details */
```

```

169. <Print a snapshot of the scrap list if debugging 169> ≡
{
  scrap_pointer k;    /* pointer into scrap_info */
  if (tracing ≡ 2) {
    printf("\\n%d:", n);
    for (k ← scrap_base; k ≤ lo_ptr; k++) {
      if (k ≡ pp) putxchar('*');
      else putxchar('␣');
      if (k→mathness % 4 ≡ yes_math) putchar('+');
      else if (k→mathness % 4 ≡ no_math) putchar('−');
      print_cat(k→cat);
      if (k→mathness / 4 ≡ yes_math) putchar('+');
      else if (k→mathness / 4 ≡ no_math) putchar('−');
    }
    if (hi_ptr ≤ scrap_ptr) printf("...");    /* indicate that more is coming */
  }
}

```

This code is used in sections 164 and 165.

170. The *translate* function assumes that scraps have been stored in positions *scrap_base* through *scrap_ptr* of *cat* and *trans*. It applies productions as much as possible. The result is a token list containing the translation of the given sequence of scraps.

After calling *translate*, we will have $text_ptr + 3 \leq max_texts$ and $tok_ptr + 6 \leq max_toks$, so it will be possible to create up to three token lists with up to six tokens without checking for overflow. Before calling *translate*, we should have $text_ptr < max_texts$ and $scrap_ptr < max_scraps$, since *translate* might add a new text and a new scrap before it checks for overflow.

```

text_pointer translate()    /* converts a sequence of scraps */
{
  scrap_pointer i,    /* index into cat */
  j;    /* runs through final scraps */
  pp ← scrap_base;
  lo_ptr ← pp − 1;
  hi_ptr ← pp;
  <If tracing, print an indication of where we are 173>;
  <Reduce the scraps using the productions until no more rules apply 166>;
  <Combine the irreducible scraps that remain 171>;
}

```

171. If the initial sequence of scraps does not reduce to a single scrap, we concatenate the translations of all remaining scraps, separated by blank spaces, with dollar signs surrounding the translations of scraps where appropriate.

```

⟨Combine the irreducible scraps that remain 171⟩ ≡
{
  ⟨If semi-tracing, show the irreducible scraps 172⟩;
  for (j ← scrap_base; j ≤ lo_ptr; j++) {
    if (j ≠ scrap_base) app(' ');
    if (j→mathness % 4 ≡ yes_math) app('$');
    app1(j);
    if (j→mathness / 4 ≡ yes_math) app('$');
    if (tok_ptr + 6 > tok_mem_end) overflow("token");
  }
  freeze_text;
  return (text_ptr - 1);
}

```

This code is used in section 170.

```

172. ⟨If semi-tracing, show the irreducible scraps 172⟩ ≡
if (lo_ptr > scrap_base ∧ tracing ≡ 1) {
  printf("\nIrreducible_scrap_sequence_in_section%d:", section_count);
  mark_harmless;
  for (j ← scrap_base; j ≤ lo_ptr; j++) {
    printf(" ");
    print_cat(j→cat);
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 171.

```

173. ⟨If tracing, print an indication of where we are 173⟩ ≡
if (tracing ≡ 2) {
  printf("\nTracing_after1.1%d:\n", cur_line);
  mark_harmless;
  if (loc > buffer + 50) {
    printf("...");
    term_write(loc - 51, 51);
  }
  else term_write(buffer, loc - buffer);
}

```

This code is used in section 170.

174. Initializing the scraps. If we are going to use the powerful production mechanism just developed, we must get the scraps set up in the first place, given a C text. A table of the initial scraps corresponding to C tokens appeared above in the section on parsing; our goal now is to implement that table. We shall do this by implementing a subroutine called *C_parse* that is analogous to the *C_xref* routine used during phase one.

Like *C_xref*, the *C_parse* procedure starts with the current value of *next_control* and it uses the operation $next_control \leftarrow get_next()$ repeatedly to read C text until encountering the next ‘|’ or ‘/*’, or until $next_control \geq format_code$. The scraps corresponding to what it reads are appended into the *cat* and *trans* arrays, and *scrap_ptr* is advanced.

```
void C_parse(spec_ctrl)    /* creates scraps from C tokens */
    eight_bits spec_ctrl;
{
    int count;    /* characters remaining before string break */
    while (next_control < format_code ∨ next_control ≡ spec_ctrl) {
        ⟨ Append the scrap appropriate to next_control 176 ⟩;
        next_control ← get_next();
        if (next_control ≡ ' | ' ∨ next_control ≡ begin_comment ∨ next_control ≡ begin_short_comment)
            return;
    }
}
```

175. The following macro is used to append a scrap whose tokens have just been appended:

```
#define app_scrap(c,b)
    {
        (++scrap_ptr)→cat ← (c);
        scrap_ptr→trans ← text_ptr;
        scrap_ptr→mathness ← 5 * (b);    /* no no, yes yes, or maybe maybe */
        freeze_text;
    }
```

```

176. < Append the scrap appropriate to next_control 176 > ≡
  < Make sure that there is room for the new scraps, tokens, and texts 177 >;
  switch (next_control) {
  case section_name: app(section_flag + (int)(cur_section - name_dir));
    app_scrap(section_scrap, maybe_math);
    app_scrap(exp, yes_math); break;
  case string: case constant: case verbatim: < Append a string or constant 179 >; break;
  case identifier: app_cur_id(1); break;
  case TEX_string: < Append a TEX string, without forming a scrap 180 >; break;
  case ' / ': case ' . ': app(next_control);
    app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
  case ' < ': app_str("\\langle"); app_scrap(prelangle, yes_math); break;
  case ' > ': app_str("\\rangle"); app_scrap(prerangle, yes_math); break;
  case '= ': app_str("\\K");
    app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
  case '| ': app_str("\\OR");
    app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
  case '^ ': app_str("\\XOR");
    app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
  case '% ': app_str("\\MOD");
    app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
  case '! ': app_str("\\R");
    app_scrap(unop, yes_math); break;
  case '~ ': app_str("\\CM");
    app_scrap(unop, yes_math); break;
  case '+ ': case '- ': app(next_control);
    app_scrap(ubinop, yes_math); break;
  case '* ': app(next_control);
    app_scrap(raw_ubin, yes_math); break;
  case '& ': app_str("\\AND");
    app_scrap(raw_ubin, yes_math); break;
  case '? ': app_str("\\?");
    app_scrap(question, yes_math); break;
  case '# ': app_str("\\#");
    app_scrap(ubinop, yes_math); break;
  case ignore: case xref_roman: case xref_wildcard: case xref_typewriter: case noop: break;
  case ' ( ': case ' [ ': app(next_control);
    app_scrap(lpar, maybe_math); break;
  case ' ) ': case ' ] ': app(next_control);
    app_scrap(rpar, maybe_math); break;
  case '{ ': app_str("\\{");
    app_scrap(lbrace, yes_math); break;
  case '} ': app_str("\\}");
    app_scrap(rbrace, yes_math); break;
  case ', ': app(' , ');
    app_scrap(comma, yes_math); break;
  case '; ': app(' ; ');
    app_scrap(semi, maybe_math); break;
  case ': ': app(' : ');
    app_scrap(colon, no_math); break;
  < Cases involving nonstandard characters 178 >
  case thin_space: app_str("\\ , ");

```



```

    app_scrap(insert, maybe_math); break;
case math_break: app(opt);
    app_str("0");
    app_scrap(insert, maybe_math); break;
case line_break: app(force);
    app_scrap(insert, no_math); break;
case left_preproc: app(force);
    app(preproc_line);
    app_str("\\#");
    app_scrap(lproc, no_math); break;
case right_preproc: app(force);
    app_scrap(rproc, no_math); break;
case big_line_break: app(big_force);
    app_scrap(insert, no_math); break;
case no_line_break: app(big_cancel);
    app(noop);
    app(break_space);
    app(noop);
    app(big_cancel);
    app_scrap(insert, no_math); break;
case pseudo_semi: app_scrap(semi, maybe_math); break;
case macro_arg_open: app_scrap(begin_arg, maybe_math); break;
case macro_arg_close: app_scrap(end_arg, maybe_math); break;
case join: app_str("\\J");
    app_scrap(insert, no_math); break;
case output_defs_code: app(force);
    app_str("\\ATH");
    app(force);
    app_scrap(insert, no_math); break;
default: app(inserted);
    app(next_control);
    app_scrap(insert, maybe_math); break;
}

```

This code is used in section 174.

```

177. <Make sure that there is room for the new scraps, tokens, and texts 177> ≡
if (scrap_ptr + safe_scrap_incr > scrap_info_end ∨ tok_ptr + safe_tok_incr > tok_mem_end
    ∨ text_ptr + safe_text_incr > tok_start_end) {
    if (scrap_ptr > max_scr_ptr) max_scr_ptr ← scrap_ptr;
    if (tok_ptr > max_tok_ptr) max_tok_ptr ← tok_ptr;
    if (text_ptr > max_text_ptr) max_text_ptr ← text_ptr;
    overflow("scrap/token/text");
}

```

This code is used in sections 176 and 184.

178. Some nonstandard characters may have entered `CWEAVE` by means of standard ones. They are converted to `TEX` control sequences so that it is possible to keep `CWEAVE` from outputting unusual `char` codes.

```

⟨ Cases involving nonstandard characters 178 ⟩ ≡
case not_eq: app_str("\\I"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case lt_eq: app_str("\\Z"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case gt_eq: app_str("\\G"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case eq_eq: app_str("\\E"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case and_and: app_str("\\W"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case or_or: app_str("\\V"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case plus_plus: app_str("\\PP"); app_scrap(unop, yes_math); break;
case minus_minus: app_str("\\MM"); app_scrap(unop, yes_math); break;
case minus_gt: app_str("\\MG"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case gt_gt: app_str("\\GG"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case lt_lt: app_str("\\LL"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case dot_dot_dot: app_str("\\,\\ldots\\,"); app_scrap(raw_int, yes_math); break;
case colon_colon: app_str("\\DC"); app_scrap(colcol, maybe_math); break;
case period_ast: app_str("\\PA"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;
case minus_gt_ast: app_str("\\MGA"); app_scrap(binop, yes_math); break;

```

This code is used in section 176.

179. The following code must use *app_tok* instead of *app* in order to protect against overflow. Note that $tok_ptr + 1 \leq max_toks$ after *app_tok* has been used, so another *app* is legitimate before testing again.

Many of the special characters in a string must be prefixed by ‘\’ so that T_EX will print them properly.

```

⟨Append a string or constant 179⟩ ≡
  count ← -1;
  if (next_control ≡ constant) app_str("\\T{");
  else if (next_control ≡ string) {
    count ← 20;
    app_str("\\.{"");
  }
  else app_str("\\vb{");
  while (id_first < id_loc) {
    if (count ≡ 0) { /* insert a discretionary break in a long string */
      app_str("}\}\}\}\.{"");
      count ← 20;
    }
    if ((eight_bits)(*id_first) > °177) {
      app_tok(quoted_char);
      app_tok((eight_bits)(*id_first++));
    }
    else {
      switch (*id_first) {
        case '␣': case '\\': case '#': case '%': case '$': case '^': case '{': case '}': case '~':
          case '&': case '_': app('\\');
          break;
        case '@':
          if (*(id_first + 1) ≡ '@') id_first++;
          else err_print("!␣Double_@_should_be_used_in_strings");
        }
      app_tok(*id_first++);
    }
    count --;
  }
  app('}');
  app_scrap(exp, maybe_math);

```

This code is used in section 176.

180. We do not make the \TeX string into a scrap, because there is no telling what the user will be putting into it; instead we leave it open, to be picked up by the next scrap. If it comes at the end of a section, it will be made into a scrap when *finish_C* is called.

There's a known bug here, in cases where an adjacent scrap is *preangle* or *prerangle*. Then the \TeX string can disappear when the $\langle \rangle$ becomes \langle or \rangle . For example, if the user writes $|x\langle ty\rangle|$, the \TeX string $\backslash\hbox{y}$ eventually becomes part of an *insert* scrap, which is combined with a *preangle* scrap and eventually lost. The best way to work around this bug is probably to enclose the $\langle ty\rangle$ in $\langle[\dots]\rangle$ so that the \TeX string is treated as an expression.

\langle Append a \TeX string, without forming a scrap 180 $\rangle \equiv$

```

app_str("\hbox{");
while (id_first < id_loc)
  if ((eight_bits)(*id_first) > °177) {
    app_tok(quoted_char);
    app_tok((eight_bits)(*id_first++));
  }
  else {
    if (*id_first ≡ '©') id_first++;
    app_tok(*id_first++);
  }
app('}');

```

This code is used in section 176.

181. The function *app_cur_id* appends the current identifier to the token list; it also builds a new scrap if *scrapping* $\equiv 1$.

\langle Predeclaration of procedures 2 $\rangle + \equiv$

```

void app_cur_id();

```

182. `void app_cur_id(scrapping)`

```

boolean scrapping; /* are we making this into a scrap? */
{
  name_pointer p ← id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal);
  if (p-ilk ≤ custom) { /* not a reserved word */
    app(id_flag + (int)(p - name_dir));
    if (scrapping)
      app_scrap(p-ilk ≡ func_template ? ftemplate : exp, p-ilk ≡ custom ? yes_math : maybe_math);
  }
  else {
    app(res_flag + (int)(p - name_dir));
    if (scrapping) {
      if (p-ilk ≡ alfop) app_scrap(ubinop, yes_math)
      else app_scrap(p-ilk, maybe_math);
    }
  }
}
}

```

183. When the ‘|’ that introduces C text is sensed, a call on *C_translate* will return a pointer to the \TeX translation of that text. If scraps exist in *scrap_info*, they are unaffected by this translation process.

```

text_pointer C_translate()
{
  text_pointer p;    /* points to the translation */
  scrap_pointer save_base; /* holds original value of scrap_base */
  save_base ← scrap_base;
  scrap_base ← scrap_ptr + 1;
  C_parse(section_name); /* get the scraps together */
  if (next_control ≠ '|') err_print("!Missing'|'afterCtext");
  app_tok(cancel);
  app_scrap(insert, maybe_math); /* place a cancel token as a final "comment" */
  p ← translate(); /* make the translation */
  if (scrap_ptr > max_scr_ptr) max_scr_ptr ← scrap_ptr;
  scrap_ptr ← scrap_base - 1;
  scrap_base ← save_base; /* scrap the scraps */
  return (p);
}

```

184. The *outer_parse* routine is to *C_parse* as *outer_xref* is to *C_xref*: It constructs a sequence of scraps for C text until $next_control \geq format_code$. Thus, it takes care of embedded comments.

The token list created from within ‘|...|’ brackets is output as an argument to `\PB`, if the user has invoked `CWEAVE` with the `+e` flag. Although `cwebmac` ignores `\PB`, other macro packages might use it to localize the special meaning of the macros that mark up program text.

```
#define make_pb flags['e']
void outer_parse() /* makes scraps from C tokens and comments */
{
  int bal; /* brace level in comment */
  text_pointer p, q; /* partial comments */
  while (next_control < format_code)
    if (next_control  $\neq$  begin_comment  $\wedge$  next_control  $\neq$  begin_short_comment) C_parse(ignore);
    else {
      boolean is_long_comment  $\leftarrow$  (next_control  $\equiv$  begin_comment);
      (Make sure that there is room for the new scraps, tokens, and texts 177);
      app(cancel);
      app(inserted);
      if (is_long_comment) app_str("\\C{");
      else app_str("\\SHC{");
      bal  $\leftarrow$  copy_comment(is_long_comment, 1);
      next_control  $\leftarrow$  ignore;
      while (bal > 0) {
        p  $\leftarrow$  text_ptr;
        freeze_text;
        q  $\leftarrow$  C_translate(); /* at this point we have tok_ptr + 6  $\leq$  max_toks */
        app(tok_flag + (int)(p - tok_start));
        if (make_pb) app_str("\\PB{");
        app(inner_tok_flag + (int)(q - tok_start));
        if (make_pb) app_tok('}');
        if (next_control  $\equiv$  '|') {
          bal  $\leftarrow$  copy_comment(is_long_comment, bal);
          next_control  $\leftarrow$  ignore;
        }
        else bal  $\leftarrow$  0; /* an error has been reported */
      }
      app(force);
      app_scrap(insert, no_math); /* the full comment becomes a scrap */
    }
}
```

185. Output of tokens. So far our programs have only built up multi-layered token lists in **CWEAVE**'s internal memory; we have to figure out how to get them into the desired final form. The job of converting token lists to characters in the **TEX** output file is not difficult, although it is an implicitly recursive process. Four main considerations had to be kept in mind when this part of **CWEAVE** was designed. (a) There are two modes of output: *outer* mode, which translates tokens like *force* into line-breaking control sequences, and *inner* mode, which ignores them except that blank spaces take the place of line breaks. (b) The *cancel* instruction applies to adjacent token or tokens that are output, and this cuts across levels of recursion since 'cancel' occurs at the beginning or end of a token list on one level. (c) The **TEX** output file will be semi-readable if line breaks are inserted after the result of tokens like *break_space* and *force*. (d) The final line break should be suppressed, and there should be no *force* token output immediately after '\Y\B'.

186. The output process uses a stack to keep track of what is going on at different "levels" as the token lists are being written out. Entries on this stack have three parts:

end_field is the *tok_mem* location where the token list of a particular level will end;
tok_field is the *tok_mem* location from which the next token on a particular level will be read;
mode_field is the current mode, either *inner* or *outer*.

The current values of these quantities are referred to quite frequently, so they are stored in a separate place instead of in the *stack* array. We call the current values *cur_end*, *cur_tok*, and *cur_mode*.

The global variable *stack_ptr* tells how many levels of output are currently in progress. The end of output occurs when an *end_translation* token is found, so the stack is never empty except when we first begin the output process.

```
#define inner 0 /* value of mode for C texts within TEX texts */
#define outer 1 /* value of mode for C texts in sections */
```

< Typedef declarations 18 > +≡

```
typedef int mode;
typedef struct {
    token_pointer end_field; /* ending location of token list */
    token_pointer tok_field; /* present location within token list */
    boolean mode_field; /* interpretation of control tokens */
} output_state;
typedef output_state *stack_pointer;
```

```
187. #define cur_end cur_state.end_field /* current ending location in tok_mem */
#define cur_tok cur_state.tok_field /* location of next output token in tok_mem */
#define cur_mode cur_state.mode_field /* current mode of interpretation */
#define init_stack stack_ptr ← stack; cur_mode ← outer /* initialize the stack */
```

< Global variables 17 > +≡

```
output_state cur_state; /* cur_end, cur_tok, cur_mode */
output_state stack[stack_size]; /* info for non-current levels */
stack_pointer stack_ptr; /* first unused location in the output state stack */
stack_pointer stack_end ← stack + stack_size - 1; /* end of stack */
stack_pointer max_stack_ptr; /* largest value assumed by stack_ptr */
```

188. < Set initial values 20 > +≡

```
max_stack_ptr ← stack;
```

189. To insert token-list p into the output, the *push_level* subroutine is called; it saves the old level of output and gets a new one going. The value of *cur_mode* is not changed.

```
void push_level(p) /* suspends the current level */
text_pointer p;
{
  if (stack_ptr == stack_end) overflow("stack");
  if (stack_ptr > stack) { /* save current state */
    stack_ptr->end_field ← cur_end;
    stack_ptr->tok_field ← cur_tok;
    stack_ptr->mode_field ← cur_mode;
  }
  stack_ptr++;
  if (stack_ptr > max_stack_ptr) max_stack_ptr ← stack_ptr;
  cur_tok ← *p;
  cur_end ← *(p + 1);
}
```

190. Conversely, the *pop_level* routine restores the conditions that were in force when the current level was begun. This subroutine will never be called when $stack_ptr \equiv 1$.

```
void pop_level()
{
  cur_end ← (--stack_ptr)->end_field;
  cur_tok ← stack_ptr->tok_field;
  cur_mode ← stack_ptr->mode_field;
}
```

191. The *get_output* function returns the next byte of output that is not a reference to a token list. It returns the values *identifier* or *res_word* or *section_code* if the next token is to be an identifier (typeset in italics), a reserved word (typeset in boldface), or a section name (typeset by a complex routine that might generate additional levels of output). In these cases *cur_name* points to the identifier or section name in question.

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡
name_pointer *cur_name*;


```

192. #define res_word °201 /* returned by get_output for reserved words */
#define section_code °200 /* returned by get_output for section names */
eight_bits get_output() /* returns the next token of output */
{
    sixteen_bits a; /* current item read from tok_mem */
restart:
    while (cur_tok ≡ cur_end) pop_level();
    a ← *(cur_tok++);
    if (a ≥ °400) {
        cur_name ← a % id_flag + name_dir;
        switch (a/id_flag) {
        case 2: return (res_word); /* a ≡ res_flag + cur_name */
        case 3: return (section_code); /* a ≡ section_flag + cur_name */
        case 4: push_level(a % id_flag + tok_start);
            goto restart; /* a ≡ tok_flag + cur_name */
        case 5: push_level(a % id_flag + tok_start);
            cur_mode ← inner;
            goto restart; /* a ≡ inner_tok_flag + cur_name */
        default: return (identifier); /* a ≡ id_flag + cur_name */
        }
    }
}
return (a);
}

```

193. The real work associated with token output is done by *make_output*. This procedure appends an *end_translation* token to the current token list, and then it repeatedly calls *get_output* and feeds characters to the output buffer until reaching the *end_translation* sentinel. It is possible for *make_output* to be called recursively, since a section name may include embedded C text; however, the depth of recursion never exceeds one level, since section names cannot be inside of section names.

A procedure called *output_C* does the scanning, translation, and output of C text within ‘| . . . |’ brackets, and this procedure uses *make_output* to output the current token list. Thus, the recursive call of *make_output* actually occurs when *make_output* calls *output_C* while outputting the name of a section.

```

void output_C() /* outputs the current token list */
{
    token_pointer save_tok_ptr;
    text_pointer save_text_ptr;
    sixteen_bits save_next_control; /* values to be restored */
    text_pointer p; /* translation of the C text */
    save_tok_ptr ← tok_ptr;
    save_text_ptr ← text_ptr;
    save_next_control ← next_control;
    next_control ← ignore;
    p ← C_translate();
    app(inner_tok_flag + (int)(p - tok_start));
    if (make_pb) {
        out_str("\\PB{");
        make_output();
        out('}');
    } else make_output(); /* output the list */
    if (text_ptr > max_text_ptr) max_text_ptr ← text_ptr;
    if (tok_ptr > max_tok_ptr) max_tok_ptr ← tok_ptr;
    text_ptr ← save_text_ptr;
    tok_ptr ← save_tok_ptr; /* forget the tokens */
    next_control ← save_next_control; /* restore next_control to original state */
}

```

194. Here is CWEAVE’s major output handler.

```

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
void make_output();

```

```

195. void make_output() /* outputs the equivalents of tokens */
{
    eight_bits a, /* current output byte */
    b; /* next output byte */
    int c; /* count of indent and outdent tokens */
    char scratch[longest_name]; /* scratch area for section names */
    char *k, *k_limit; /* indices into scratch */
    char *j; /* index into buffer */
    char *p; /* index into byte_mem */
    char delim; /* first and last character of string being copied */
    char *save_loc, *save_limit; /* loc and limit to be restored */
    name_pointer cur_section_name; /* name of section being output */
    boolean save_mode; /* value of cur_mode before a sequence of breaks */
    app(end_translation); /* append a sentinel */
    freeze_text;
    push_level(text_ptr - 1);
    while (1) {
        a ← get_output();
    reswitch:
        switch (a) {
            case end_translation: return;
            case identifier: case res_word: ⟨Output an identifier 196⟩;
                break;
            case section_code: ⟨Output a section name 200⟩;
                break;
            case math_rel: out_str("\\MRL{");
            case noop: case inserted: break;
            case cancel: case big_cancel: c ← 0;
                b ← a;
                while (1) {
                    a ← get_output();
                    if (a ≡ inserted) continue;
                    if ((a < indent ∧ ¬(b ≡ big_cancel ∧ a ≡ '␣')) ∨ a > big_force) break;
                    if (a ≡ indent) c++;
                    else if (a ≡ outdent) c--;
                    else if (a ≡ opt) a ← get_output();
                }
                ⟨Output saved indent or outdent tokens 199⟩;
                goto reswitch;
            case indent: case outdent: case opt: case backup: case break_space: case force: case big_force:
                case preproc_line:
                    ⟨Output a control, look ahead in case of line breaks, possibly goto reswitch 197⟩;
                    break;
            case quoted_char: out(*(cur_tok++));
            case qualifier: break;
            default: out(a); /* otherwise a is an ordinary character */
        }
    }
}

```

196. An identifier of length one does not have to be enclosed in braces, and it looks slightly better if set in a math-italic font instead of a (slightly narrower) text-italic font. Thus we output ‘ $|a$ ’ but ‘ $\{\mathit{aa}\}$ ’.

⟨Output an identifier 196⟩ ≡

```

out('\l');
if (a ≡ identifier) {
  if (cur_name-ilk ≡ custom ∧ ¬doing-format) {
    custom_out:
    for (p ← cur_name-byte_start; p < (cur_name + 1)-byte_start; p++)
      out(*p ≡ '_' ? 'x' : *p ≡ '$' ? 'X' : *p);
    break;
  }
  else if (is_tiny(cur_name)) out('|')
  else {
    delim ← '.';
    for (p ← cur_name-byte_start; p < (cur_name + 1)-byte_start; p++)
      if (xislower(*p)) { /* not entirely uppercase */
        delim ← '\l';
        break;
      }
    out(delim);
  }
} else if (cur_name-ilk ≡ alfop) {
  out('X');
  goto custom_out;
} else out('&'); /* a ≡ res_word */
if (is_tiny(cur_name)) {
  if (isalpha((cur_name-byte_start)[0])) out('\l');
  out((cur_name-byte_start)[0]);
}
else out_name(cur_name, 1);

```

This code is used in section 195.

197. The current mode does not affect the behavior of CWEAVE’s output routine except when we are outputting control tokens.

⟨Output a control, look ahead in case of line breaks, possibly **goto** *reswitch* 197⟩ ≡

```

if (a < break_space ∨ a ≡ preproc_line) {
  if (cur_mode ≡ outer) {
    out('\l');
    out(a - cancel + '0');
    if (a ≡ opt) {
      b ← get_output(); /* opt is followed by a digit */
      if (b ≠ '0' ∨ force_lines ≡ 0) out(b)
      else out_str("{-1}"); /* force_lines encourages more @| breaks */
    }
  }
  else if (a ≡ opt) b ← get_output(); /* ignore digit following opt */
}
else ⟨Look ahead for strongest line break, goto reswitch 198⟩

```

This code is used in section 195.

198. If several of the tokens *break_space*, *force*, *big_force* occur in a row, possibly mixed with blank spaces (which are ignored), the largest one is used. A line break also occurs in the output file, except at the very end of the translation. The very first line break is suppressed (i.e., a line break that follows ‘ $\backslash Y \backslash B$ ’).

```

⟨Look ahead for strongest line break, goto reswitch 198⟩ ≡
{
  b ← a;
  save_mode ← cur_mode;
  c ← 0;
  while (1) {
    a ← get_output();
    if (a ≡ inserted) continue;
    if (a ≡ cancel ∨ a ≡ big_cancel) {
      ⟨Output saved indent or outdent tokens 199⟩;
      goto reswitch; /* cancel overrides everything */
    }
    if ((a ≠ '␣' ∧ a < indent) ∨ a ≡ backup ∨ a > big_force) {
      if (save_mode ≡ outer) {
        if (out_ptr > out_buf + 3 ∧ strcmp(out_ptr - 3, "\\Y\\B", 4) ≡ 0) goto reswitch;
        ⟨Output saved indent or outdent tokens 199⟩;
        out('\\');
        out(b - cancel + '0');
        if (a ≠ end_translation) finish_line();
      }
      else if (a ≠ end_translation ∧ cur_mode ≡ inner) out('␣');
      goto reswitch;
    }
    if (a ≡ indent) c++;
    else if (a ≡ outdent) c--;
    else if (a ≡ opt) a ← get_output();
    else if (a > b) b ← a; /* if a ≡ '␣' we have a < b */
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 197.

199. ⟨Output saved *indent* or *outdent* tokens 199⟩ ≡
for (; c > 0; c--) out_str("\\1");
for (; c < 0; c++) out_str("\\2");

This code is used in sections 195 and 198.

200. The remaining part of *make_output* is somewhat more complicated. When we output a section name, we may need to enter the parsing and translation routines, since the name may contain C code embedded in `|...|` constructions. This C code is placed at the end of the active input buffer and the translation process uses the end of the active *tok_mem* area.

```

<Output a section name 200> ≡
{
  out_str("\\X");
  cur_xref ← (xref_pointer) cur_name→xref;
  if (cur_xref→num ≡ file_flag) {
    an_output ← 1;
    cur_xref ← cur_xref→xlink;
  }
  else an_output ← 0;
  if (cur_xref→num ≥ def_flag) {
    out_section(cur_xref→num - def_flag);
    if (phase ≡ 3) {
      cur_xref ← cur_xref→xlink;
      while (cur_xref→num ≥ def_flag) {
        out_str(",□");
        out_section(cur_xref→num - def_flag);
        cur_xref ← cur_xref→xlink;
      }
    }
  }
  else out('0'); /* output the section number, or zero if it was undefined */
  out(':');
  if (an_output) out_str("\\{");
  <Output the text of the section name 201>;
  if (an_output) out_str("□");
  out_str("\\X");
}

```

This code is used in section 195.

```

201.  ⟨Output the text of the section name 201⟩ ≡
  sprint_section_name(scratch, cur_name);
  k ← scratch;
  k_limit ← scratch + strlen(scratch);
  cur_section_name ← cur_name; while (k < k_limit) { b ← *(k++);
if (b ≡ '@') ⟨Skip next character, give error if not '@' 202⟩;
if (an_output)
  switch (b) {
    case '␣': case '\\': case '#': case '%': case '$': case '^': case '{': case '}': case '~':
      case '&': case '_': out('\\'); /* falls through */
    default: out(b);
  }
else if (b ≠ '|') out(b)
else {
  ⟨Copy the C text into the buffer array 203⟩;
  save_loc ← loc;
  save_limit ← limit;
  loc ← limit + 2;
  limit ← j + 1;
  *limit ← '|';
  output_C();
  loc ← save_loc;
  limit ← save_limit;
}
}
}

```

This code is used in section 200.

```

202.  ⟨Skip next character, give error if not '@' 202⟩ ≡
if (*k++ ≠ '@') {
  printf("\n!␣Illegal␣control␣code␣in␣section␣name:␣<");
  print_section_name(cur_section_name);
  printf(">␣");
  mark_error;
}

```

This code is used in section 201.

203. The C text enclosed in `| ... |` should not contain `'|'` characters, except within strings. We put a `'|'` at the front of the buffer, so that an error message that displays the whole buffer will look a little bit sensible. The variable *delim* is zero outside of strings, otherwise it equals the delimiter that began the string being copied.

```

⟨ Copy the C text into the buffer array 203 ⟩ ≡
  j ← limit + 1;
  *j ← '|';
  delim ← 0; while (1) {
  if (k ≥ k_limit) {
    printf("\n!C_text_in_section_name_didn't_end:<");
    print_section_name(cur_section_name);
    printf(">");
    mark_error;
    break;
  }
  b ← *(k++); if (b ≡ '@' ∨ (b ≡ '\\\' ∧ delim ≠ 0)) ⟨ Copy a quoted character into the buffer 204 ⟩
  else {
    if (b ≡ '\\\' ∨ b ≡ '\"')
      if (delim ≡ 0) delim ← b;
      else if (delim ≡ b) delim ← 0;
    if (b ≠ '|\' ∨ delim ≠ 0) {
      if (j > buffer + long_buf_size - 3) overflow("buffer");
      *(++j) ← b;
    }
    else break;
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 201.

```

204. ⟨ Copy a quoted character into the buffer 204 ⟩ ≡
  {
    if (j > buffer + long_buf_size - 4) overflow("buffer");
    *(++j) ← b;
    *(++j) ← *(k++);
  }

```

This code is used in section 203.

205. Phase two processing. We have assembled enough pieces of the puzzle in order to be ready to specify the processing in **CWEAVE**'s main pass over the source file. Phase two is analogous to phase one, except that more work is involved because we must actually output the **TEX** material instead of merely looking at the **CWEB** specifications.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```
void phase_two();
```

206. void phase_two()

```
{
  reset_input();
  if (show_progress) printf("\nWriting the output file...");
  section_count ← 0;
  format_visible ← 1;
  copy_limbo();
  finish_line();
  flush_buffer(out_buf, 0, 0); /* insert a blank line, it looks nice */
  while (-input_has_ended) ⟨Translate the current section 208⟩;
}
```

207. The output file will contain the control sequence $\backslash Y$ between non-null sections of a section, e.g., between the **TEX** and definition parts if both are nonempty. This puts a little white space between the parts when they are printed. However, we don't want $\backslash Y$ to occur between two definitions within a single section. The variables *out_line* or *out_ptr* will change if a section is non-null, so the following macros 'save_position' and 'emit_space_if_needed' are able to handle the situation:

```
#define save_position save_line ← out_line; save_place ← out_ptr
```

```
#define emit_space_if_needed
```

```
  if (save_line ≠ out_line ∨ save_place ≠ out_ptr) out_str("\Y");
  space_checked ← 1
```

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡

```
int save_line; /* former value of out_line */
char *save_place; /* former value of out_ptr */
int sec_depth; /* the integer, if any, following @* */
boolean space_checked; /* have we done emit_space_if_needed? */
boolean format_visible; /* should the next format declaration be output? */
boolean doing_format ← 0; /* are we outputting a format declaration? */
boolean group_found ← 0; /* has a starred section occurred? */
```

208. ⟨Translate the current section 208⟩ ≡

```
{
  section_count++;
  ⟨Output the code for the beginning of a new section 209⟩;
  save_position;
  ⟨Translate the TEX part of the current section 210⟩;
  ⟨Translate the definition part of the current section 211⟩;
  ⟨Translate the C part of the current section 217⟩;
  ⟨Show cross-references to this section 220⟩;
  ⟨Output the code for the end of a section 224⟩;
}
```

This code is used in section 206.

209. Sections beginning with the CWEB control sequence ‘@_’ start in the output with the T_EX control sequence ‘\M’, followed by the section number. Similarly, ‘@*’ sections lead to the control sequence ‘\N’. In this case there’s an additional parameter, representing one plus the specified depth, immediately after the \N. If the section has changed, we put * just after the section number.

```

⟨Output the code for the beginning of a new section 209⟩ ≡
  if (*(loc - 1) ≠ '*') out_str("\\M");
  else {
    while (*loc ≡ '_') loc++;
    if (*loc ≡ '*') { /* "top" level */
      sec_depth ← -1;
      loc++;
    }
    else {
      for (sec_depth ← 0; xisdigit(*loc); loc++) sec_depth ← sec_depth * 10 + (*loc) - '0';
    }
    while (*loc ≡ '_') loc++; /* remove spaces before group title */
    group_found ← 1;
    out_str("\\N");
    { char s[32]; sprintf(s, "{%d}", sec_depth + 1); out_str(s); }
    if (show_progress) printf("%d", section_count);
    update_terminal; /* print a progress report */
  }
  out_str("{");
  out_section(section_count);
  out_str("}");

```

This code is used in section 208.

210. In the T_EX part of a section, we simply copy the source text, except that index entries are not copied and C text within |...| is translated.

```

⟨Translate the TEX part of the current section 210⟩ ≡
  do {
    next_control ← copy_TEX();
    switch (next_control) {
      case '|': init_stack;
        output_C();
        break;
      case '@': out('@');
        break;
      case TEX_string: case noop: case xref_roman: case xref_wildcard: case xref_typewriter:
        case section_name: loc -= 2;
        next_control ← get_next(); /* skip to @> */
        if (next_control ≡ TEX_string) err_print("!_TeX_string_should_be_in_C_text_only");
        break;
      case thin_space: case math_break: case ord: case line_break: case big_line_break:
        case no_line_break: case join: case pseudo_semi: case macro_arg_open: case macro_arg_close:
        case output_defs_code: err_print("!_You_can't_do_that_in_TeX_text");
        break;
    }
  } while (next_control < format_code);

```

This code is used in section 208.

211. When we get to the following code we have $next_control \geq format_code$, and the token memory is in its initial empty state.

```

⟨Translate the definition part of the current section 211⟩ ≡
  space_checked ← 0;
  while (next_control ≤ definition) { /* format_code or definition */
    init_stack;
    if (next_control ≡ definition) ⟨Start a macro definition 214⟩
    else ⟨Start a format definition 215⟩;
    outer_parse();
    finish_C(format_visible);
    format_visible ← 1;
    doing_format ← 0;
  }

```

This code is used in section 208.

212. The *finish_C* procedure outputs the translation of the current scraps, preceded by the control sequence ‘\B’ and followed by the control sequence ‘\par’. It also restores the token and scrap memories to their initial empty state.

A *force* token is appended to the current scraps before translation takes place, so that the translation will normally end with \6 or \7 (the T_EX macros for *force* and *big_force*). This \6 or \7 is replaced by the concluding \par or by \Y\par.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```
void finish_C();
```

```

213. void finish_C(visible) /* finishes a definition or a C part */
  boolean visible; /* nonzero if we should produce TEX output */
{
  text_pointer p; /* translation of the scraps */
  if (visible) {
    out_str("\B");
    app_tok(force);
    app_scrap(insert, no_math);
    p ← translate();
    app(tok_flag + (int)(p - tok_start));
    make_output(); /* output the list */
    if (out_ptr > out_buf + 1)
      if (*(out_ptr - 1) ≡ '\\')
        if (*out_ptr ≡ '6') out_ptr -= 2;
        else if (*out_ptr ≡ '7') *out_ptr ← 'Y';
    out_str("\par");
    finish_line();
  }
  if (text_ptr > max_text_ptr) max_text_ptr ← text_ptr;
  if (tok_ptr > max_tok_ptr) max_tok_ptr ← tok_ptr;
  if (scrap_ptr > max_scr_ptr) max_scr_ptr ← scrap_ptr;
  tok_ptr ← tok_mem + 1;
  text_ptr ← tok_start + 1;
  scrap_ptr ← scrap_info; /* forget the tokens and the scraps */
}

```

214. Keeping in line with the conventions of the C preprocessor (and otherwise contrary to the rules of **CWEB**) we distinguish here between the case that ‘(’ immediately follows an identifier and the case that the two are separated by a space. In the latter case, and if the identifier is not followed by ‘(’ at all, the replacement text starts immediately after the identifier. In the former case, it starts after we scan the matching ‘)’.

```

⟨Start a macro definition 214⟩ ≡
{
  if (save_line ≠ out_line ∨ save_place ≠ out_ptr ∨ space_checked) app(backup);
  if (¬space_checked) {
    emit_space_if_needed;
    save_position;
  }
  app_str("\\D"); /* this will produce ‘define ’ */
  if ((next_control ← get_next()) ≠ identifier) err_print("!␣Improper␣macro␣definition");
  else {
    app('$');
    app_cur_id(0);
    if (*loc ≡ '(')
      reswitch:
        switch (next_control ← get_next()) {
          case '(': case ',': app(next_control);
            goto reswitch;
          case identifier: app_cur_id(0);
            goto reswitch;
          case ')': app(next_control);
            next_control ← get_next();
            break;
          default: err_print("!␣Improper␣macro␣definition");
            break;
        }
    else next_control ← get_next();
    app_str("$␣");
    app(break_space);
    app_scrap(dead, no_math); /* scrap won't take part in the parsing */
  }
}

```

This code is used in section 211.

```

215. ⟨Start a format definition 215⟩ ≡
{
  doing_format ← 1;
  if (*(loc - 1) ≡ 's' ∨ *(loc - 1) ≡ 'S') format_visible ← 0;
  if (¬space_checked) {
    emit_space_if_needed;
    save_position;
  }
  app_str("\\F"); /* this will produce 'format' */
  next_control ← get_next();
  if (next_control ≡ identifier) {
    app(id_flag + (int)(id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal) - name_dir));
    app(' ');
    app(break_space); /* this is syntactically separate from what follows */
    next_control ← get_next();
    if (next_control ≡ identifier) {
      app(id_flag + (int)(id_lookup(id_first, id_loc, normal) - name_dir));
      app_scrap(exp, maybe_math);
      app_scrap(semi, maybe_math);
      next_control ← get_next();
    }
  }
  if (scrap_ptr ≠ scrap_info + 2) err_print("! Improper format definition");
}

```

This code is used in section 211.

216. Finally, when the T_EX and definition parts have been treated, we have $next_control \geq begin_C$. We will make the global variable *this_section* point to the current section name, if it has a name.

⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡

```

name_pointer this_section; /* the current section name, or zero */

```

```

217. ⟨Translate the C part of the current section 217⟩ ≡
this_section ← name_dir;
if (next_control ≤ section_name) {
  emit_space_if_needed;
  init_stack;
  if (next_control ≡ begin_C) next_control ← get_next();
  else {
    this_section ← cur_section;
    ⟨Check that '=' or '==' follows this section name, and emit the scraps to start the section
      definition 218⟩;
  }
  while (next_control ≤ section_name) {
    outer_parse();
    ⟨Emit the scrap for a section name if present 219⟩;
  }
  finish_C(1);
}

```

This code is used in section 208.

218. The title of the section and an \equiv or $+\equiv$ are made into a scrap that should not take part in the parsing.

```

⟨ Check that '=' or '===' follows this section name, and emit the scraps to start the section definition 218 ⟩ ≡
do next_control ← get_next(); while (next_control ≡ '+'); /* allow optional '+' */
if (next_control ≠ '=' ∧ next_control ≠ eq_eq)
  err_print("! You need an = sign after the section name");
else next_control ← get_next();
if (out_ptr > out_buf + 1 ∧ *out_ptr ≡ 'Y' ∧ *(out_ptr - 1) ≡ '\\') app(backup);
/* the section name will be flush left */
app(section_flag + (int)(this_section - name_dir));
cur_xref ← (xref_pointer) this_section-xref;
if (cur_xref-num ≡ file_flag) cur_xref ← cur_xref-xlink;
app_str("${}");
if (cur_xref-num ≠ section_count + def_flag) {
  app_str("\\mathrel+"); /* section name is multiply defined */
  this_section ← name_dir; /* so we won't give cross-reference info here */
}
app_str("\\E"); /* output an equivalence sign */
app_str("{}$");
app(force);
app_scrap(dead, no_math); /* this forces a line break unless '@+' follows */

```

This code is used in section 217.

219. ⟨ Emit the scrap for a section name if present 219 ⟩ ≡

```

if (next_control < section_name) {
  err_print("! You can't do that in C text");
  next_control ← get_next();
}
else if (next_control ≡ section_name) {
  app(section_flag + (int)(cur_section - name_dir));
  app_scrap(section_scrap, maybe_math);
  next_control ← get_next();
}

```

This code is used in section 217.

220. Cross references relating to a named section are given after the section ends.

⟨ Show cross-references to this section 220 ⟩ ≡

```

if (this_section > name_dir) {
  cur_xref ← (xref_pointer) this_section-xref;
  if (cur_xref-num ≡ file_flag) {
    an_output ← 1;
    cur_xref ← cur_xref-xlink;
  }
  else an_output ← 0;
  if (cur_xref-num > def_flag) cur_xref ← cur_xref-xlink; /* bypass current section number */
  footnote(def_flag);
  footnote(cite_flag);
  footnote(0);
}

```

This code is used in section 208.

221. The *footnote* procedure gives cross-reference information about multiply defined section names (if the *flag* parameter is *def_flag*), or about references to a section name (if *flag* \equiv *cite_flag*), or to its uses (if *flag* \equiv 0). It assumes that *cur_xref* points to the first cross-reference entry of interest, and it leaves *cur_xref* pointing to the first element not printed. Typical outputs: ‘\A101.’; ‘\Us 370\ET1009.’; ‘\As 8, 27*\ETs64.’.

Note that the output of **CWEAVE** is not English-specific; users may supply new definitions for the macros \A, \As, etc.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ \equiv

```
void footnote();
```

222. `void footnote(flag) /* outputs section cross-references */`
`sixteen_bits flag;`
`{`
`xref_pointer q; /* cross-reference pointer variable */`
`if (cur_xref->num \leq flag) return;`
`finish_line();`
`out('\ ');`
`out(flag \equiv 0 ? 'U' : flag \equiv cite_flag ? 'Q' : 'A');`
`⟨Output all the section numbers on the reference list cur_xref 223⟩;`
`out('.');`
`}`

223. The following code distinguishes three cases, according as the number of cross-references is one, two, or more than two. Variable *q* points to the first cross-reference, and the last link is a zero.

⟨Output all the section numbers on the reference list *cur_xref* 223⟩ \equiv

```
q ← cur_xref;
if (q->xlink->num > flag) out('s'); /* plural */
while (1) {
  out_section(cur_xref->num - flag);
  cur_xref ← cur_xref->xlink; /* point to the next cross-reference to output */
  if (cur_xref->num  $\leq$  flag) break;
  if (cur_xref->xlink->num > flag) out_str(", "); /* not the last */
  else {
    out_str("\ET"); /* the last */
    if (cur_xref  $\neq$  q->xlink) out('s'); /* the last of more than two */
  }
}
```

This code is used in section 222.

224. ⟨Output the code for the end of a section 224⟩ \equiv

```
out_str("\fi");
finish_line();
flush_buffer(out_buf, 0, 0); /* insert a blank line, it looks nice */
```

This code is used in section 208.

225. Phase three processing. We are nearly finished! `CWEAVE`'s only remaining task is to write out the index, after sorting the identifiers and index entries.

If the user has set the `no_xref` flag (the `-x` option on the command line), just finish off the page, omitting the index, section name list, and table of contents.

⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡

```
void phase_three();
```

226. void phase_three()

```
{
  if (no_xref) {
    finish_line();
    out_str("\\end");
    finish_line();
  }
  else {
    phase ← 3;
    if (show_progress) printf("\nWriting the index...");
    finish_line();
    if ((idx_file ← fopen(idx_file_name, "w")) ≡ Λ)
      fatal("! Cannot open index file", idx_file_name);
    if (change_exists) {
      ⟨Tell about changed sections 228⟩;
      finish_line();
      finish_line();
    }
    out_str("\\inx");
    finish_line();
    active_file ← idx_file; /* change active file to the index file */
    ⟨Do the first pass of sorting 230⟩;
    ⟨Sort and output the index 239⟩;
    finish_line();
    fclose(active_file); /* finished with idx_file */
    active_file ← tex_file; /* switch back to tex_file for a tic */
    out_str("\\fin");
    finish_line();
    if ((scn_file ← fopen(scn_file_name, "w")) ≡ Λ)
      fatal("! Cannot open section file", scn_file_name);
    active_file ← scn_file; /* change active file to section listing file */
    ⟨Output all the section names 248⟩;
    finish_line();
    fclose(active_file); /* finished with scn_file */
    active_file ← tex_file;
    if (group_found) out_str("\\con"); else out_str("\\end");
    finish_line();
    fclose(active_file);
  }
  if (show_happiness) printf("\nDone.");
  check_complete(); /* was all of the change file used? */
}
```


227. Just before the index comes a list of all the changed sections, including the index section itself.

```
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  sixteen_bits k_section; /* runs through the sections */
```

```
228. ⟨Tell about changed sections 228⟩ ≡
{
  /* remember that the index is already marked as changed */
  k_section ← 0;
  while (¬changed_section[++k_section]) ;
  out_str("\\ch_");
  out_section(k_section);
  while (k_section < section_count) {
    while (¬changed_section[++k_section]) ;
    out_str(", ");
    out_section(k_section);
  }
  out(' . ');
}
```

This code is used in section 226.

229. A left-to-right radix sorting method is used, since this makes it easy to adjust the collating sequence and since the running time will be at worst proportional to the total length of all entries in the index. We put the identifiers into 102 different lists based on their first characters. (Uppercase letters are put into the same list as the corresponding lowercase letters, since we want to have ‘*t* < *TeX* < *to*’.) The list for character *c* begins at location *bucket*[*c*] and continues through the *blink* array.

```
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +=
  name_pointer bucket[256];
  name_pointer next_name; /* successor of cur_name when sorting */
  name_pointer blink[max_names]; /* links in the buckets */
```

230. To begin the sorting, we go through all the hash lists and put each entry having a nonempty cross-reference list into the proper bucket.

```
⟨Do the first pass of sorting 230⟩ ≡
{
  int c;
  for (c ← 0; c ≤ 255; c++) bucket[c] ← Λ;
  for (h ← hash; h ≤ hash_end; h++) {
    next_name ← *h;
    while (next_name) {
      cur_name ← next_name;
      next_name ← cur_name-link;
      if (cur_name-xref ≠ (char *) xmem) {
        c ← (eight_bits)((cur_name-byte_start)[0]);
        if (xisupper(c)) c ← tolower(c);
        blink[cur_name - name_dir] ← bucket[c];
        bucket[c] ← cur_name;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

This code is used in section 226.

231. During the sorting phase we shall use the *cat* and *trans* arrays from CWEAVE's parsing algorithm and rename them *depth* and *head*. They now represent a stack of identifier lists for all the index entries that have not yet been output. The variable *sort_ptr* tells how many such lists are present; the lists are output in reverse order (first *sort_ptr*, then *sort_ptr* - 1, etc.). The *j*th list starts at *head*[*j*], and if the first *k* characters of all entries on this list are known to be equal we have *depth*[*j*] ≡ *k*.

232. ⟨ Rest of *trans_plus* union 232 ⟩ ≡

```
name_pointer Head;
```

This code is used in section 103.

233. **#define** *depth* *cat* /* reclaims memory that is no longer needed for parsing */

```
#define head trans_plus.Head /* ditto */
```

```
format sort_pointer int
```

```
#define sort_pointer scrap_pointer /* ditto */
```

```
#define sort_ptr scrap_ptr /* ditto */
```

```
#define max_sorts max_scrap /* ditto */
```

⟨ Global variables 17 ⟩ +≡

```
eight_bits cur_depth; /* depth of current buckets */
```

```
char *cur_byte; /* index into byte_mem */
```

```
sixteen_bits cur_val; /* current cross-reference number */
```

```
sort_pointer max_sort_ptr; /* largest value of sort_ptr */
```

234. ⟨ Set initial values 20 ⟩ +≡

```
max_sort_ptr ← scrap_info;
```

235. The desired alphabetic order is specified by the *collate* array; namely, *collate*[0] < *collate*[1] < ... < *collate*[100].

⟨ Global variables 17 ⟩ +≡

```
eight_bits collate[102 + 128]; /* collation order */
```

236. We use the order null < \square < other characters < $_ < A = a < \dots < Z = z < 0 < \dots < 9$. Warning: The collation mapping needs to be changed if ASCII code is not being used.

We initialize *collate* by copying a few characters at a time, because some C compilers choke on long strings.

(Set initial values 20) +≡

```

collate[0] ← 0;
strcpy(collate + 1, "\1\2\3\4\5\6\7\10\11\12\13\14\15\16\17"); /* 16 characters + 1 = 17 */
strcpy(collate + 17, "\20\21\22\23\24\25\26\27\30\31\32\33\34\35\36\37");
/* 16 characters + 17 = 33 */
strcpy(collate + 33, "!@2#$$%&'()*+,-./:;<=>?@[\\]^`{|}~_"); /* 32 characters + 33 = 65 */
strcpy(collate + 65, "abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz0123456789");
/* (26 + 10) characters + 65 = 101 */
strcpy(collate + 101, "\200\201\202\203\204\205\206\207\210\211\212\213\214\215\216\217");
/* 16 characters + 101 = 117 */
strcpy(collate + 117, "\220\221\222\223\224\225\226\227\230\231\232\233\234\235\236\237");
/* 16 characters + 117 = 133 */
strcpy(collate + 133, "\240\241\242\243\244\245\246\247\250\251\252\253\254\255\256\257");
/* 16 characters + 133 = 149 */
strcpy(collate + 149, "\260\261\262\263\264\265\266\267\270\271\272\273\274\275\276\277");
/* 16 characters + 149 = 165 */
strcpy(collate + 165, "\300\301\302\303\304\305\306\307\310\311\312\313\314\315\316\317");
/* 16 characters + 165 = 181 */
strcpy(collate + 181, "\320\321\322\323\324\325\326\327\330\331\332\333\334\335\336\337");
/* 16 characters + 181 = 197 */
strcpy(collate + 197, "\340\341\342\343\344\345\346\347\350\351\352\353\354\355\356\357");
/* 16 characters + 197 = 213 */
strcpy(collate + 213, "\360\361\362\363\364\365\366\367\370\371\372\373\374\375\376\377");
/* 16 characters + 213 = 229 */

```

237. Procedure *unbucket* goes through the buckets and adds nonempty lists to the stack, using the collating sequence specified in the *collate* array. The parameter to *unbucket* tells the current depth in the buckets. Any two sequences that agree in their first 255 character positions are regarded as identical.

```
#define infinity 255 /* ∞ (approximately) */
```

(Predeclaration of procedures 2) +≡

```
void unbucket();
```

238. void *unbucket*(*d*) /* empties buckets having depth *d* */
eight_bits *d*;

```

{
int c; /* index into bucket; cannot be a simple char because of sign comparison below */
for (c ← 100 + 128; c ≥ 0; c--)
if (bucket[collate[c]]) {
if (sort_ptr ≥ scrap_info_end) overflow("sorting");
sort_ptr++;
if (sort_ptr > max_sort_ptr) max_sort_ptr ← sort_ptr;
if (c ≡ 0) sort_ptr-depth ← infinity;
else sort_ptr-depth ← d;
sort_ptr-head ← bucket[collate[c]];
bucket[collate[c]] ← Λ;
}
}

```

239. \langle Sort and output the index 239 $\rangle \equiv$
sort_ptr \leftarrow *scrap_info*;
unbucket(1);
while (*sort_ptr* > *scrap_info*) {
 cur_depth \leftarrow *sort_ptr*→*depth*;
 if (*blink*[*sort_ptr*→*head* - *name_dir*] \equiv 0 \vee *cur_depth* \equiv *infinity*)
 \langle Output index entries for the list at *sort_ptr* 241 \rangle
 else \langle Split the list at *sort_ptr* into further lists 240 \rangle ;
}

This code is used in section 226.

240. \langle Split the list at *sort_ptr* into further lists 240 $\rangle \equiv$
{
 eight_bits *c*;
 next_name \leftarrow *sort_ptr*→*head*;
 do {
 cur_name \leftarrow *next_name*;
 next_name \leftarrow *blink*[*cur_name* - *name_dir*];
 cur_byte \leftarrow *cur_name*→*byte_start* + *cur_depth*;
 if (*cur_byte* \equiv (*cur_name* + 1)→*byte_start*) *c* \leftarrow 0; /* hit end of the name */
 else {
 c \leftarrow (**eight_bits**) * *cur_byte*;
 if (*xisupper*(*c*)) *c* \leftarrow *tolower*(*c*);
 }
 blink[*cur_name* - *name_dir*] \leftarrow *bucket*[*c*];
 bucket[*c*] \leftarrow *cur_name*;
 } **while** (*next_name*);
 --*sort_ptr*;
 unbucket(*cur_depth* + 1);
}

This code is used in section 239.

241. \langle Output index entries for the list at *sort_ptr* 241 $\rangle \equiv$
{
 cur_name \leftarrow *sort_ptr*→*head*;
 do {
 out_str("\\I");
 \langle Output the name at *cur_name* 242 \rangle ;
 \langle Output the cross-references at *cur_name* 243 \rangle ;
 cur_name \leftarrow *blink*[*cur_name* - *name_dir*];
 } **while** (*cur_name*);
 --*sort_ptr*;
}

This code is used in section 239.

```

242. <Output the name at cur_name 242> ≡
switch (cur_name-ilk) {
case normal: case func_template:
  if (is_tiny(cur_name)) out_str("\\|");
  else {
    char *j;
    for (j ← cur_name-byte_start; j < (cur_name + 1)-byte_start; j++)
      if (xislower(*j)) goto lowercase;
    out_str("\\.".");
    break;
  lowercase: out_str("\\\\\\");
  }
  break;
case wildcard: out_str("\\9"); goto not_an_identifier;
case typewriter: out_str("\\.".");
case roman: not_an_identifier: out_name(cur_name,0);
  goto name_done;
case custom:
  {
    char *j;
    out_str("$\\");
    for (j ← cur_name-byte_start; j < (cur_name + 1)-byte_start; j++)
      out(*j ≡ '_' ? 'x' : *j ≡ '$' ? 'X' : *j);
    out('');
    goto name_done;
  }
default: out_str("\\&");
}
out_name(cur_name,1);
name_done:

```

This code is used in section 241.

243. Section numbers that are to be underlined are enclosed in ‘`[...]`’.

```

<Output the cross-references at cur_name 243> ≡
<Invert the cross-reference list at cur_name, making cur_xref the head 245>;
do {
  out_str(",␣");
  cur_val ← cur_xref-num;
  if (cur_val < def_flag) out_section(cur_val);
  else {
    out_str("\\["");
    out_section(cur_val - def_flag);
    out(']');
  }
  cur_xref ← cur_xref-xlink;
} while (cur_xref ≠ xmem);
out('');
finish_line();

```

This code is used in section 241.

244. List inversion is best thought of as popping elements off one stack and pushing them onto another. In this case *cur_xref* will be the head of the stack that we push things onto.

```
⟨Global variables 17⟩ +≡
  xref_pointer next_xref, this_xref;    /* pointer variables for rearranging a list */
```

```
245. ⟨Invert the cross-reference list at cur_name, making cur_xref the head 245⟩ ≡
  this_xref ← (xref_pointer) cur_name-xref;
  cur_xref ← xmem;
  do {
    next_xref ← this_xref-xlink;
    this_xref-xlink ← cur_xref;
    cur_xref ← this_xref;
    this_xref ← next_xref;
  } while (this_xref ≠ xmem);
```

This code is used in section 243.

246. The following recursive procedure walks through the tree of section names and prints them.

```
⟨Predeclaration of procedures 2⟩ +≡
```

```
  void section_print();
```

```
247. void section_print(p)    /* print all section names in subtree p */
  name_pointer p;
```

```
{
  if (p) {
    section_print(p-llink);
    out_str("\\I");
    tok_ptr ← tok_mem + 1;
    text_ptr ← tok_start + 1;
    scrap_ptr ← scrap_info;
    init_stack;
    app(p - name_dir + section_flag);
    make_output();
    footnote(cite_flag);
    footnote(0);    /* cur_xref was set by make_output */
    finish_line();
    section_print(p-rlink);
  }
}
```

```
248. ⟨Output all the section names 248⟩ ≡
  section_print(root)
```

This code is used in section 226.

249. Because on some systems the difference between two pointers is a **long** rather than an **int**, we use `%ld` to print these quantities.

```
void print_stats()
{
    printf("\nMemory_usage_statistics:\n");
    printf("%ld_names_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(name_ptr - name_dir), (long) max_names);
    printf("%ld_cross-references_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(xref_ptr - xmem), (long) max_refs);
    printf("%ld_bytes_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(byte_ptr - byte_mem), (long) max_bytes);
    printf("Parsing:\n");
    printf("%ld_scrap_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(max_scr_ptr - scrap_info), (long) max_scrap);
    printf("%ld_texts_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(max_text_ptr - tok_start), (long) max_texts);
    printf("%ld_tokens_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(max_tok_ptr - tok_mem), (long) max_toks);
    printf("%ld_levels_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(max_stack_ptr - stack), (long) stack_size);
    printf("Sorting:\n");
    printf("%ld_levels_(out_of_%ld)\n", (long)(max_sort_ptr - scrap_info), (long) max_scrap);
}
```

250. Index. If you have read and understood the code for Phase III above, you know what is in this index and how it got here. All sections in which an identifier is used are listed with that identifier, except that reserved words are indexed only when they appear in format definitions, and the appearances of identifiers in section names are not indexed. Underlined entries correspond to where the identifier was declared. Error messages, control sequences put into the output, and a few other things like “recursion” are indexed here too.

| | |
|---|--|
| <code>\):</code> 179. | <code>\MGA:</code> 178. |
| <code>*:</code> 86. | <code>\MM:</code> 178. |
| <code>\,:</code> 118, 131, 134, 151, 162, 176, 178. | <code>\MOD:</code> 176. |
| <code>\.:</code> 179, 196, 200, 242. | <code>\MRL:</code> 195. |
| <code>\?:</code> 176. | <code>\N:</code> 209. |
| <code>\[:</code> 243. | <code>\NULL:</code> 182. |
| <code>_:</code> 157, 179, 201. | <code>\OR:</code> 176. |
| <code>\#:</code> 176, 179, 201. | <code>\PA:</code> 178. |
| <code>\\$:</code> 87, 179, 201. | <code>\PB:</code> 184, 193. |
| <code>\%:</code> 179, 201. | <code>\PP:</code> 178. |
| <code>\&:</code> 179, 196, 201, 242. | <code>\Q:</code> 222. |
| <code>\\::</code> 179, 196, 201, 242. | <code>\R:</code> 176. |
| <code>\^:</code> 179, 201. | <code>\rangle:</code> 176. |
| <code>\{:</code> 176, 179, 201. | <code>\SHC:</code> 184. |
| <code>\}::</code> 176, 179, 201. | <code>\T:</code> 179. |
| <code>\~:</code> 179, 201. | <code>\U:</code> 222. |
| <code>_:</code> 87, 179, 201. | <code>\V:</code> 178. |
| <code>\ :</code> 196, 242. | <code>\vb:</code> 179. |
| <code>\A:</code> 222. | <code>\W:</code> 178. |
| <code>\AND:</code> 176. | <code>\X:</code> 200. |
| <code>\ATH:</code> 176. | <code>\XOR:</code> 176. |
| <code>\ATL:</code> 88. | <code>\Y:</code> 207, 213, 218. |
| <code>\B:</code> 213. | <code>\Z:</code> 178. |
| <code>\C:</code> 184. | <code>\1:</code> 197, 199. |
| <code>\ch:</code> 228. | <code>\2:</code> 197, 199. |
| <code>\CM:</code> 176. | <code>\3:</code> 197. |
| <code>\con:</code> 226. | <code>\4:</code> 197. |
| <code>\D:</code> 214. | <code>\5:</code> 146, 198. |
| <code>\DC:</code> 178. | <code>\6:</code> 198, 213. |
| <code>\E:</code> 178, 218. | <code>\7:</code> 198, 213. |
| <code>\end:</code> 226. | <code>\8:</code> 197. |
| <code>\ET:</code> 223. | <code>\9:</code> 242. |
| <code>\F:</code> 215. | <code>a:</code> <u>109</u> , <u>192</u> , <u>195</u> . |
| <code>\fi:</code> 224. | <code>abnormal:</code> <u>16</u> , 27. |
| <code>\fin:</code> 226. | <code>ac:</code> <u>3</u> , 13. |
| <code>\G:</code> 178. | <code>active_file:</code> <u>14</u> , 78, 80, 226. |
| <code>\GG:</code> 178. | <code>alfop:</code> <u>16</u> , 28, 98, 101, 182, 196. |
| <code>\I:</code> 178, 241, 247. | <code>an_output:</code> <u>73</u> , 75, 200, 201, 220. |
| <code>\inx:</code> 226. | <code>and_and:</code> <u>7</u> , 46, 178. |
| <code>\J:</code> 176. | <code>any:</code> 102. |
| <code>\K:</code> 176. | <code>any_other:</code> 102. |
| <code>\langle:</code> 176. | <code>app:</code> <u>108</u> , 109, 117, 118, 126, 127, 129, 132, 134, |
| <code>\ldots:</code> 178. | 137, 139, 140, 146, 149, 150, 151, 162, 171, |
| <code>\LL:</code> 178. | 176, 179, 180, 182, 184, 193, 195, 213, 214, |
| <code>\M:</code> 209. | 215, 218, 219, 247. |
| <code>\MG:</code> 178. | <code>app_cur_id:</code> 176, <u>181</u> , <u>182</u> , 214. |

- app_scrap*: [175](#), [176](#), [178](#), [179](#), [182](#), [183](#), [184](#),
[213](#), [214](#), [215](#), [218](#), [219](#).
app_str: [109](#), [131](#), [146](#), [157](#), [176](#), [178](#), [179](#), [180](#),
[184](#), [214](#), [215](#), [218](#).
app_tok: [91](#), [92](#), [94](#), [95](#), [109](#), [179](#), [180](#), [183](#),
[184](#), [213](#).
append_xref: [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [116](#).
app1: [108](#), [171](#).
argc: [3](#), [13](#).
argv: [3](#), [13](#), [113](#).
ASCII code dependencies: [7](#), [30](#), [236](#).
av: [3](#), [13](#).
b: [78](#), [102](#), [195](#).
backup: [100](#), [102](#), [107](#), [134](#), [143](#), [195](#), [198](#), [214](#), [218](#).
bal: [65](#), [92](#), [93](#), [95](#), [184](#).
banner: [1](#), [3](#).
base: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [129](#), [130](#), [136](#), [163](#).
begin_arg: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [176](#).
begin_C: [30](#), [32](#), [72](#), [216](#), [217](#).
begin_comment: [30](#), [46](#), [63](#), [65](#), [174](#), [184](#).
begin_short_comment: [30](#), [46](#), [63](#), [65](#), [174](#), [184](#).
big_app: [108](#), [109](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [121](#), [122](#), [123](#),
[124](#), [127](#), [128](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#), [135](#),
[136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [143](#), [144](#), [145](#),
[146](#), [147](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#), [156](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#).
big_app1: [108](#), [109](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [121](#), [122](#), [123](#),
[124](#), [127](#), [128](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#), [135](#),
[136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [141](#), [143](#), [144](#), [145](#), [146](#),
[151](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#), [156](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [165](#).
big_app2: [108](#), [117](#), [118](#), [127](#), [129](#), [140](#), [142](#), [146](#),
[147](#), [157](#), [161](#), [162](#).
big_app3: [108](#), [118](#), [151](#).
big_app4: [108](#).
big_cancel: [100](#), [101](#), [107](#), [109](#), [176](#), [195](#), [198](#).
big_force: [100](#), [101](#), [102](#), [107](#), [109](#), [128](#), [133](#), [144](#),
[176](#), [195](#), [198](#), [212](#).
big_line_break: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
binop: [96](#), [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [120](#), [121](#),
[124](#), [127](#), [149](#), [150](#), [160](#), [163](#), [176](#), [178](#).
blink: [229](#), [230](#), [239](#), [240](#), [241](#).
boolean: [5](#), [11](#), [12](#), [13](#), [17](#), [41](#), [43](#), [65](#), [73](#), [78](#), [87](#),
[92](#), [182](#), [184](#), [186](#), [195](#), [207](#), [213](#).
break_out: [81](#), [82](#), [83](#), [84](#).
break_space: [100](#), [101](#), [102](#), [107](#), [136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#),
[140](#), [143](#), [144](#), [176](#), [185](#), [195](#), [197](#), [198](#), [214](#), [215](#).
bucket: [229](#), [230](#), [238](#), [240](#).
buf_size: [4](#).
buffer: [8](#), [40](#), [48](#), [49](#), [53](#), [79](#), [92](#), [173](#), [195](#), [203](#), [204](#).
buffer_end: [8](#), [44](#).
bug, known: [180](#).
byte_mem: [9](#), [24](#), [87](#), [195](#), [233](#), [249](#).
byte_mem_end: [9](#).
byte_ptr: [9](#), [249](#).
byte_start: [9](#), [21](#), [27](#), [37](#), [68](#), [87](#), [196](#), [230](#), [240](#), [242](#).
C: [102](#).
c: [32](#), [35](#), [40](#), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#), [99](#), [164](#), [165](#), [195](#),
[230](#), [238](#), [240](#).
C text...didn't end: [203](#).
C_file: [11](#), [14](#).
C_file_name: [11](#).
c_line_write: [78](#).
C_parse: [174](#), [183](#), [184](#).
C_printf: [14](#).
C_putc: [14](#).
C_translate: [183](#), [184](#), [193](#).
C_xref: [62](#), [63](#), [64](#), [65](#), [66](#), [174](#), [184](#).
cancel: [100](#), [101](#), [102](#), [107](#), [137](#), [139](#), [140](#), [183](#),
[184](#), [185](#), [195](#), [197](#), [198](#).
Cannot open index file: [226](#).
Cannot open section file: [226](#).
carryover: [78](#).
case_found: [111](#).
case_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [111](#), [117](#).
cast: [96](#), [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [123](#),
[127](#), [142](#), [151](#), [153](#), [159](#), [161](#).
cat: [103](#), [108](#), [110](#), [112](#), [164](#), [165](#), [167](#), [169](#), [170](#),
[172](#), [174](#), [175](#), [231](#), [233](#).
cat_index: [97](#), [98](#).
cat_name: [97](#), [98](#), [99](#).
catch_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#).
cat1: [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [119](#), [120](#), [121](#), [122](#), [123](#), [124](#),
[125](#), [126](#), [127](#), [128](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#),
[135](#), [136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [143](#),
[144](#), [146](#), [147](#), [148](#), [151](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#), [155](#),
[156](#), [157](#), [159](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [163](#).
cat2: [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [124](#), [127](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#),
[134](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [146](#), [151](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#),
[160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [163](#).
cat3: [110](#), [117](#), [127](#), [134](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [146](#), [153](#).
ccode: [31](#), [32](#), [33](#), [35](#), [36](#), [37](#), [50](#), [54](#), [88](#), [90](#).
change_exists: [17](#), [60](#), [61](#), [226](#).
change_file: [11](#).
change_file_name: [11](#).
change_line: [11](#).
change_pending: [12](#).
changed_section: [12](#), [17](#), [60](#), [61](#), [86](#), [228](#).
changing: [11](#), [61](#).
check_complete: [11](#), [226](#).
chunk_marker: [9](#).
cite_flag: [18](#), [20](#), [22](#), [63](#), [75](#), [220](#), [221](#), [222](#), [247](#).
colcol: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [126](#), [154](#), [159](#), [178](#).
collate: [235](#), [236](#), [237](#), [238](#).
colon: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [117](#), [124](#), [125](#), [127](#), [130](#),
[136](#), [141](#), [163](#), [176](#).

- colon_colon*: [7](#), 46, 178.
comma: [96](#), [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 108, 117, 118, 127, 129, 134, 151, 160, 161, 176.
common_init: [3](#), [15](#).
compress: [46](#).
confusion: [10](#), 111.
const_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110, 117, 154, 157.
constant: [37](#), 48, 176, 179.
Control codes are forbidden...: 54, 56.
Control text didn't end: 56.
copy_comment: 65, 88, [91](#), [92](#), 184.
copy_limbo: [88](#), 206.
copy_TEX: 88, 89, [90](#), 210.
count: [174](#), 179.
ctangle: [5](#).
cur_byte: [233](#), 240.
cur_depth: [233](#), 239, 240.
cur_end: 186, [187](#), 189, 190, 192.
cur_file: [11](#).
cur_file_name: [11](#).
cur_line: [11](#), 173.
cur_mathness: [108](#), 109, 149, 150, 164, 166.
cur_mode: 186, [187](#), 189, 190, 192, 195, 197, 198.
cur_name: [191](#), 192, 196, 200, 201, 229, 230, 240, 241, 242, 245.
cur_section: [37](#), 51, 63, 72, 176, 217, 219.
cur_section_char: [37](#), 51, 72.
cur_section_name: [195](#), 201, 202, 203.
cur_state: [187](#).
cur_tok: 186, [187](#), 189, 190, 192, 195.
cur_val: [233](#), 243.
cur_xref: [73](#), 75, 200, 218, 220, 221, 222, 223, 243, 244, 245, 247.
custom: [16](#), 21, 28, 182, 196, 242.
custom_out: [196](#).
cweave: 3, [5](#).
d: [164](#), [165](#), [238](#).
dead: [97](#), 98, 214, 218.
dec: [48](#).
decl: 28, [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 110, 117, 118, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 134, 143, 144, 161.
decl_head: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 118, 124, 127, 130, 151.
def_flag: 18, 19, [20](#), 21, 22, 37, 50, 66, 69, 70, 72, 75, 86, 113, 115, 200, 218, 220, 221, 243.
define_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 146.
definition: [30](#), 32, 69, 211.
delete_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110, 160, 162.
delim: [49](#), [195](#), 196, 203.
depth: 231, [233](#), 238, 239.
do_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110.
doing_format: 196, [207](#), 211, 215.
done: [92](#), 93, 94.
dot_dot_dot: [7](#), 46, 178.
Double @ should be used...: 88, 179.
dst: [67](#).
dummy: [9](#), 16.
eight_bits: [5](#), 8, 27, 31, 35, 36, 39, 40, 50, 54, 58, 63, 88, 90, 97, 99, 103, 164, 165, 174, 179, 180, 192, 195, 230, 233, 235, 238, 240.
else_head: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 136, 139.
else_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110, 138, 139, 140, 146, 156.
emit_space_if_needed: [207](#), 214, 215, 217.
end_arg: [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 110, 176.
end_field: [186](#), 187, 189, 190.
end_translation: [100](#), 107, 186, 193, 195, 198.
eq_eq: [7](#), 46, 178, 218.
equiv_or_xref: [9](#), 20.
err_print: [10](#), 49, 50, 53, 54, 56, 57, 66, 71, 88, 92, 93, 94, 179, 183, 210, 214, 215, 218, 219.
error_message: [10](#).
exit: 38.
exp: 96, [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 108, 110, 112, 113, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 123, 124, 126, 127, 129, 130, 134, 135, 137, 139, 141, 142, 146, 147, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 176, 179, 182, 215.
Extra } in comment: 92.
f: [102](#).
false_alarm: 56.
fatal: [10](#), 226.
fatal_message: [10](#).
fclose: 226.
fflush: 14, 78, 106.
file: [11](#).
file_flag: [20](#), 23, 73, 75, 200, 218, 220.
file_name: [11](#).
find_first_ident: [111](#), 112, 113.
finish_C: 180, 211, [212](#), [213](#), 217.
finish_line: [79](#), 80, 88, 89, 90, 198, 206, 213, 222, 224, 226, 243, 247.
first: [27](#).
flag: 221, [222](#), 223.
flags: [13](#), 21, 144, 184.
flush_buffer: [78](#), 79, 84, 85, 206, 224.
fn_decl: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 117, 127, 132, 142.
footnote: 220, [221](#), [222](#), 247.
fopen: 226.
for_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110.
force: [100](#), 101, 102, 106, 107, 128, 131, 132, 134, 136, 137, 138, 139, 143, 144, 147, 176, 184, 185, 195, 198, 212, 213, 218.
force_lines: 3, [144](#), 197.

- format_code*: [30](#), [32](#), [35](#), [62](#), [63](#), [64](#), [65](#), [66](#), [69](#),
[88](#), [174](#), [184](#), [210](#), [211](#).
format_visible: [206](#), [207](#), [211](#), [215](#).
found: [102](#), [113](#), [117](#).
fprintf: [14](#), [78](#).
freeze_text: [164](#), [171](#), [175](#), [184](#), [195](#).
ftemplate: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [182](#).
func_template: [16](#), [28](#), [182](#), [242](#).
function: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [128](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#),
[134](#), [143](#), [144](#), [146](#).
fwrite: [14](#), [78](#).
get_line: [11](#), [35](#), [36](#), [40](#), [45](#), [49](#), [53](#), [79](#), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#).
get_next: [37](#), [39](#), [40](#), [41](#), [58](#), [63](#), [66](#), [69](#), [70](#), [71](#), [72](#),
[88](#), [174](#), [210](#), [214](#), [215](#), [217](#), [218](#), [219](#).
get_output: [191](#), [192](#), [193](#), [195](#), [197](#), [198](#).
group_found: [207](#), [209](#), [226](#).
gt_eq: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
gt_gt: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
h: [9](#).
harmless_message: [10](#).
hash: [9](#), [230](#).
hash_end: [9](#), [230](#).
hash_pointer: [9](#).
hash_size: [4](#).
Head: [232](#), [233](#).
head: [231](#), [233](#), [238](#), [239](#), [240](#), [241](#).
hi_ptr: [103](#), [104](#), [112](#), [167](#), [169](#), [170](#).
high-bit character handling: [39](#), [100](#), [179](#), [180](#),
[235](#), [236](#), [238](#).
history: [10](#).
i: [102](#), [164](#), [165](#), [170](#).
id_first: [7](#), [37](#), [47](#), [48](#), [49](#), [56](#), [57](#), [63](#), [66](#), [67](#), [70](#),
[71](#), [179](#), [180](#), [182](#), [215](#).
id_flag: [106](#), [111](#), [112](#), [113](#), [182](#), [192](#), [215](#).
id_loc: [7](#), [37](#), [47](#), [48](#), [49](#), [56](#), [57](#), [63](#), [66](#), [67](#), [70](#),
[71](#), [179](#), [180](#), [182](#), [215](#).
id_lookup: [9](#), [27](#), [28](#), [37](#), [63](#), [66](#), [70](#), [71](#), [182](#), [215](#).
identifier: [37](#), [47](#), [62](#), [63](#), [66](#), [70](#), [71](#), [88](#), [176](#), [191](#),
[192](#), [195](#), [196](#), [214](#), [215](#).
idx_file: [11](#), [14](#), [226](#).
idx_file_name: [11](#), [226](#).
if_clause: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [135](#).
if_head: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [138](#).
if_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [138](#), [139](#), [146](#).
ignore: [30](#), [62](#), [65](#), [176](#), [184](#), [193](#).
ilk: [16](#), [21](#), [27](#), [70](#), [71](#), [111](#), [112](#), [182](#), [196](#), [242](#).
llk: [9](#), [16](#).
Illegal control code...: [202](#).
Illegal use of @...: [94](#).
Improper format definition: [215](#).
Improper macro definition: [214](#).
in: [102](#).
include_depth: [11](#).
indent: [100](#), [102](#), [107](#), [117](#), [127](#), [131](#), [134](#), [136](#),
[138](#), [142](#), [195](#), [198](#).
infinity: [237](#), [238](#), [239](#).
init_mathness: [108](#), [109](#), [149](#), [150](#), [164](#), [166](#).
init_node: [27](#).
init_p: [27](#).
init_stack: [187](#), [210](#), [211](#), [217](#), [247](#).
inner: [185](#), [186](#), [192](#), [198](#).
inner_tok_flag: [106](#), [111](#), [184](#), [192](#), [193](#).
Input ended in mid-comment: [92](#).
Input ended in middle of string: [49](#).
Input ended in section name: [53](#).
input_has_ended: [11](#), [34](#), [60](#), [206](#).
insert: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [146](#), [176](#), [180](#),
[183](#), [184](#), [213](#).
inserted: [100](#), [107](#), [111](#), [146](#), [176](#), [184](#), [195](#), [198](#).
int_like: [16](#), [28](#), [96](#), [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#),
[118](#), [119](#), [120](#), [124](#), [125](#), [126](#), [127](#), [129](#), [130](#),
[131](#), [151](#), [154](#), [158](#), [159](#), [161](#).
Irreducible scrap sequence...: [172](#).
is_long_comment: [65](#), [92](#), [184](#).
is_tiny: [21](#), [196](#), [242](#).
isalpha: [8](#), [38](#), [47](#).
isdigit: [8](#), [38](#), [47](#).
ishigh: [39](#), [40](#), [47](#), [92](#).
islower: [8](#).
isspace: [8](#).
isupper: [8](#).
isxalpha: [39](#), [40](#), [47](#), [87](#), [196](#).
isxdigit: [8](#).
i1: [164](#).
j: [78](#), [106](#), [111](#), [164](#), [165](#), [170](#), [195](#), [242](#).
join: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
k: [51](#), [79](#), [84](#), [87](#), [102](#), [164](#), [165](#), [169](#), [195](#).
k_end: [87](#).
k_limit: [195](#), [201](#), [203](#).
k_section: [227](#), [228](#).
l: [27](#).
langle: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [151](#), [152](#), [155](#), [159](#).
lbrace: [96](#), [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [127](#), [129](#),
[130](#), [136](#), [138](#), [176](#).
left_preproc: [41](#), [42](#), [176](#).
length: [9](#), [27](#).
lhs: [68](#), [70](#), [71](#).
lhs_not_simple: [110](#).
limit: [8](#), [29](#), [35](#), [36](#), [40](#), [45](#), [46](#), [49](#), [53](#), [56](#), [57](#),
[79](#), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#), [195](#), [201](#), [203](#).
line: [11](#).
Line had to be broken: [85](#).
line_break: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
line_length: [4](#), [77](#).

- link*: [9](#), [230](#).
llink: [9](#), [75](#), [247](#).
lo_ptr: [103](#), [104](#), [112](#), [164](#), [166](#), [167](#), [169](#), [170](#),
[171](#), [172](#).
loc: [8](#), [29](#), [35](#), [36](#), [40](#), [44](#), [45](#), [46](#), [47](#), [48](#), [49](#), [50](#),
[51](#), [53](#), [54](#), [56](#), [57](#), [61](#), [66](#), [88](#), [90](#), [92](#), [93](#), [94](#),
[173](#), [195](#), [201](#), [209](#), [210](#), [214](#), [215](#).
long_buf_size: [4](#), [203](#), [204](#).
longest_name: [4](#), [7](#), [49](#), [195](#).
lowercase: [242](#).
lpar: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [122](#), [127](#),
[153](#), [154](#), [159](#), [161](#), [162](#), [176](#).
lproc: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [146](#), [176](#).
lt_eq: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
lt_lt: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
m: [21](#), [115](#).
macro_arg_close: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
macro_arg_open: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
main: [3](#), [13](#), [106](#).
make_output: [193](#), [194](#), [195](#), [200](#), [213](#), [247](#).
make_pair: [102](#).
make_pb: [3](#), [184](#), [193](#).
make_reserved: [102](#), [111](#), [112](#), [113](#), [130](#), [161](#).
make_underlined: [102](#), [113](#), [117](#), [127](#), [130](#), [146](#),
[161](#).
make_xrefs: [3](#), [21](#).
mark_error: [10](#), [49](#), [202](#), [203](#).
mark_harmless: [10](#), [53](#), [75](#), [85](#), [172](#), [173](#).
math_break: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
math_rel: [100](#), [102](#), [106](#), [107](#), [120](#), [121](#), [195](#).
mathness: [101](#), [102](#), [103](#), [108](#), [109](#), [163](#), [164](#),
[167](#), [169](#), [171](#), [175](#).
max_bytes: [4](#), [249](#).
max_file_name_length: [11](#).
max_names: [4](#), [229](#), [249](#).
max_refs: [4](#), [19](#), [249](#).
max_scr_ptr: [104](#), [105](#), [177](#), [183](#), [213](#), [249](#).
max_scraps: [4](#), [104](#), [170](#), [233](#), [249](#).
max_sections: [4](#), [20](#), [61](#).
max_sort_ptr: [233](#), [234](#), [238](#), [249](#).
max_sorts: [233](#).
max_stack_ptr: [187](#), [188](#), [189](#), [249](#).
max_text_ptr: [25](#), [26](#), [166](#), [177](#), [193](#), [213](#), [249](#).
max_texts: [4](#), [25](#), [170](#), [249](#).
max_tok_ptr: [25](#), [26](#), [166](#), [177](#), [193](#), [213](#), [249](#).
max_toks: [4](#), [25](#), [170](#), [179](#), [184](#), [249](#).
maybe_math: [108](#), [109](#), [166](#), [176](#), [178](#), [179](#), [182](#),
[183](#), [215](#), [219](#).
Memory usage statistics:: [249](#).
minus_gt: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
minus_gt_ast: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
minus_minus: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
Missing ']'...: [183](#).
Missing } in comment: [92](#), [93](#).
Missing left identifier...: [71](#).
Missing right identifier...: [71](#).
mistake: [40](#), [48](#).
mode: [186](#).
mode_field: [186](#), [187](#), [189](#), [190](#).
n: [21](#), [86](#), [102](#), [115](#), [164](#), [165](#).
name_dir: [9](#), [20](#), [72](#), [106](#), [111](#), [112](#), [113](#), [176](#),
[182](#), [192](#), [215](#), [217](#), [218](#), [219](#), [220](#), [230](#), [239](#),
[240](#), [241](#), [247](#), [249](#).
name_dir_end: [9](#).
name_done: [242](#).
name_info: [9](#), [16](#).
name_pointer: [9](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [27](#), [37](#), [63](#), [68](#), [75](#),
[87](#), [115](#), [182](#), [191](#), [195](#), [216](#), [229](#), [232](#), [247](#).
name_ptr: [9](#), [28](#), [249](#).
names_match: [27](#).
Never defined: <section name>: [75](#).
Never used: <section name>: [75](#).
new_exp: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [110](#), [153](#), [154](#), [160](#).
new_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [153](#), [160](#).
new_line: [14](#), [85](#).
new_section: [30](#), [32](#), [35](#), [36](#), [40](#), [45](#), [54](#), [88](#), [90](#).
new_section_xref: [22](#), [63](#), [72](#).
new_xref: [21](#), [63](#), [66](#), [70](#), [114](#).
next_control: [58](#), [62](#), [63](#), [64](#), [65](#), [66](#), [69](#), [70](#), [72](#),
[174](#), [176](#), [179](#), [183](#), [184](#), [193](#), [210](#), [211](#), [214](#),
[215](#), [216](#), [217](#), [218](#), [219](#).
next_name: [229](#), [230](#), [240](#).
next_xref: [244](#), [245](#).
no_ident_found: [111](#).
no_line_break: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
no_math: [108](#), [109](#), [169](#), [176](#), [184](#), [213](#), [214](#), [218](#).
no_xref: [21](#), [115](#), [225](#), [226](#).
noop: [30](#), [32](#), [35](#), [50](#), [66](#), [88](#), [102](#), [137](#), [139](#), [140](#),
[176](#), [195](#), [210](#).
normal: [16](#), [27](#), [62](#), [70](#), [71](#), [182](#), [215](#), [242](#).
not_an_identifier: [242](#).
not_eq: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
num: [18](#), [20](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [70](#), [75](#), [115](#), [116](#), [200](#),
[218](#), [220](#), [222](#), [223](#), [243](#).
operator_found: [111](#), [112](#), [113](#).
operator_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [111](#).
opt: [96](#), [100](#), [101](#), [102](#), [107](#), [117](#), [118](#), [129](#), [151](#),
[176](#), [195](#), [197](#), [198](#).
or_or: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
ord: [30](#), [32](#), [41](#), [50](#), [210](#).
out: [81](#), [87](#), [88](#), [90](#), [102](#), [193](#), [195](#), [196](#), [197](#), [198](#),
[200](#), [201](#), [210](#), [222](#), [223](#), [228](#), [242](#), [243](#).
out_buf: [77](#), [78](#), [79](#), [80](#), [82](#), [84](#), [85](#), [90](#), [198](#),
[206](#), [213](#), [218](#), [224](#).

- out_buf_end*: [77](#), [78](#), [81](#).
out_line: [77](#), [78](#), [80](#), [85](#), [207](#), [214](#).
out_name: [87](#), [196](#), [242](#).
out_ptr: [77](#), [78](#), [79](#), [80](#), [81](#), [84](#), [85](#), [90](#), [198](#), [207](#), [213](#), [214](#), [218](#).
out_section: [86](#), [200](#), [209](#), [223](#), [228](#), [243](#).
out_str: [81](#), [86](#), [88](#), [193](#), [195](#), [197](#), [199](#), [200](#), [207](#), [209](#), [213](#), [223](#), [224](#), [226](#), [228](#), [241](#), [242](#), [243](#), [247](#).
outdent: [100](#), [102](#), [107](#), [131](#), [132](#), [134](#), [136](#), [138](#), [195](#), [198](#).
outer: [185](#), [186](#), [187](#), [197](#), [198](#).
outer_parse: [184](#), [211](#), [217](#).
outer_xref: [64](#), [65](#), [69](#), [72](#), [184](#).
output_C: [193](#), [201](#), [210](#).
output_defs_code: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
output_state: [186](#), [187](#).
overflow: [10](#), [21](#), [61](#), [91](#), [166](#), [171](#), [177](#), [189](#), [203](#), [204](#), [238](#).
p: [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [27](#), [63](#), [75](#), [87](#), [106](#), [111](#), [112](#), [113](#), [115](#), [182](#), [183](#), [184](#), [189](#), [193](#), [195](#), [213](#), [247](#).
per_cent: [78](#).
period_ast: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
phase: [5](#), [60](#), [92](#), [94](#), [95](#), [200](#), [226](#).
phase_one: [3](#), [59](#), [60](#).
phase_three: [3](#), [225](#), [226](#).
phase_two: [3](#), [205](#), [206](#).
plus_plus: [7](#), [46](#), [178](#).
pop_level: [190](#), [192](#).
pp: [103](#), [104](#), [108](#), [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [119](#), [120](#), [121](#), [122](#), [123](#), [124](#), [125](#), [126](#), [127](#), [128](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#), [135](#), [136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [143](#), [144](#), [145](#), [146](#), [147](#), [148](#), [149](#), [150](#), [151](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#), [155](#), [156](#), [157](#), [158](#), [159](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [163](#), [164](#), [165](#), [166](#), [167](#), [169](#), [170](#).
prelangle: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [152](#), [155](#), [159](#), [176](#), [180](#).
preproc_line: [100](#), [101](#), [107](#), [176](#), [195](#), [197](#).
preprocessing: [41](#), [42](#), [45](#).
prerangle: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [151](#), [176](#), [180](#).
print_cat: [99](#), [169](#), [172](#).
print_id: [9](#), [106](#).
print_section_name: [9](#), [75](#), [106](#), [202](#), [203](#).
print_stats: [249](#).
print_text: [106](#).
print_where: [12](#).
printf: [3](#), [49](#), [53](#), [61](#), [75](#), [85](#), [99](#), [106](#), [107](#), [169](#), [172](#), [173](#), [202](#), [203](#), [206](#), [209](#), [226](#), [249](#).
program: [3](#), [5](#).
pseudo_semi: [30](#), [32](#), [176](#), [210](#).
public_like: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#).
push_level: [189](#), [192](#), [195](#).
putc: [14](#), [78](#).
putchar: [14](#), [75](#), [169](#).
putcxchar: [14](#), [107](#), [169](#).
q: [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [70](#), [111](#), [115](#), [184](#), [222](#).
qualifier: [100](#), [102](#), [111](#), [126](#), [195](#).
question: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [176](#).
quote_xalpha: [87](#).
quoted_char: [92](#), [100](#), [107](#), [179](#), [180](#), [195](#).
r: [22](#), [70](#), [106](#), [111](#), [115](#).
raw_int: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [111](#), [112](#), [124](#), [152](#), [154](#), [159](#), [178](#).
raw_ubin: [16](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [154](#), [157](#), [160](#), [176](#).
rbrace: [97](#), [98](#), [102](#), [117](#), [131](#), [134](#), [176](#).
recursion: [74](#), [193](#), [246](#).
reduce: [108](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [121](#), [122](#), [123](#), [124](#), [127](#), [128](#), [129](#), [130](#), [131](#), [132](#), [133](#), [134](#), [135](#), [136](#), [137](#), [138](#), [139](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [143](#), [144](#), [145](#), [146](#), [147](#), [149](#), [150](#), [151](#), [152](#), [153](#), [154](#), [156](#), [157](#), [160](#), [161](#), [162](#), [164](#), [165](#).
res_flag: [106](#), [111](#), [112](#), [182](#), [192](#).
res_wd_end: [21](#), [28](#), [68](#).
res_word: [191](#), [192](#), [195](#), [196](#).
reserved words: [28](#).
reset_input: [11](#), [60](#), [206](#).
restart: [192](#).
reswitch: [195](#), [198](#), [214](#).
rhs: [68](#), [70](#), [71](#).
right_preproc: [41](#), [45](#), [176](#).
Rlink: [9](#).
rlink: [9](#), [16](#), [75](#), [247](#).
roman: [16](#), [62](#), [242](#).
root: [9](#), [76](#), [248](#).
rpar: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [117](#), [118](#), [120](#), [127](#), [153](#), [162](#), [176](#).
rproc: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [146](#), [176](#).
s: [81](#), [86](#), [109](#), [209](#).
safe_scrap_incr: [166](#), [177](#).
safe_text_incr: [166](#), [177](#).
safe_tok_incr: [166](#), [177](#).
save_base: [183](#).
save_limit: [195](#), [201](#).
save_line: [207](#), [214](#).
save_loc: [195](#), [201](#).
save_mode: [195](#), [198](#).
save_next_control: [193](#).
save_place: [207](#), [214](#).
save_position: [207](#), [208](#), [214](#), [215](#).
save_text_ptr: [193](#).
save_tok_ptr: [193](#).
scn_file: [11](#), [14](#), [226](#).
scn_file_name: [11](#), [226](#).
scrap: [103](#), [104](#).

- scrap_base*: 103, [104](#), 105, 164, 165, 169, 170, 171, 172, 183.
scrap_info: 103, [104](#), 105, 169, 183, 213, 215, 234, 239, 247, 249.
scrap_info_end: [104](#), 177, 238.
scrap_pointer: [103](#), 104, 109, 112, 113, 164, 165, 169, 170, 183, 233.
scrap_ptr: 103, [104](#), 105, 112, 167, 169, 170, 174, 175, 177, 183, 213, 215, 233, 247.
scrapping: 181, [182](#).
scratch: [195](#), 201.
sec_depth: [207](#), 209.
Section name didn't end: 54.
Section name too long: 53.
section_check: [74](#), [75](#), 76.
section_code: 191, [192](#), 195.
section_count: [12](#), 17, 21, 22, 60, 61, 115, 172, 206, 208, 209, 218, 228.
section_flag: [106](#), 111, 176, 192, 218, 219, 247.
section_lookup: [9](#), 51, 52.
section_name: [30](#), 32, 37, 50, 51, 62, 63, 65, 66, 72, 176, 183, 210, 217, 219.
section_print: [246](#), [247](#), 248.
section_scrap: [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 110, 176, 219.
section_text: [7](#), 37, 48, 49, 51, 52, 53.
section_text_end: [7](#), 49, 53.
section_xref_switch: 18, [19](#), 20, 22, 63, 72.
semi: [97](#), 98, 101, 102, 110, 117, 122, 124, 127, 130, 140, 141, 147, 161, 176, 215.
set_file_flag: [23](#), 72.
sharp_include_line: 40, [43](#), 44, 45.
show_banner: 3, [13](#).
show_happiness: [13](#), 226.
show_progress: [13](#), 61, 206, 209, 226.
sixteen_bits: [12](#), 18, 19, 21, 24, 86, 106, 111, 112, 115, 192, 193, 222, 227, 233.
sizeof_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110.
skip_comment: 88.
skip_limbo: [34](#), [35](#), 60, 88.
skip_restricted: 35, 50, [55](#), [56](#), 88.
skip_TEX: [36](#), 66, 88.
sort_pointer: [233](#).
sort_ptr: 231, [233](#), 238, 239, 240, 241.
space_checked: [207](#), 211, 214, 215.
spec_ctrl: 62, [63](#), [174](#).
special string characters: 179.
spotless: [10](#).
sprint_section_name: [9](#), 201.
sprintf: 86, 209.
squash: 108, 110, 117, 118, 119, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 130, 134, 136, 138, 139, 141, 146, 147, 148, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 163, [165](#).
src: [67](#).
stack: 186, [187](#), 188, 189, 249.
stack_end: [187](#), 189.
stack_pointer: [186](#), 187.
stack_ptr: 186, [187](#), 189, 190.
stack_size: [4](#), 187, 249.
stdout: 14, 106.
stmt: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 117, 118, 128, 131, 132, 133, 134, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 147.
strcmp: [2](#).
strcpy: [2](#), 98, 236.
string: [37](#), 49, 176, 179.
String didn't end: 49.
String too long: 49.
strlen: [2](#), 201.
strncmp: [2](#), 27, 44, 51, 198.
strncpy: [2](#), 78.
struct_head: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 130.
struct_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110, 124, 154.
t: [27](#).
tag: [97](#), 98, 102, 110, 117, 125, 141, 143.
template_like: [16](#), 28, 98, 101, 102, 110.
term_write: 9, [14](#), 49, 53, 85, 173.
TeX string should be...: 210.
tex_file: 11, [14](#), 80, 226.
tex_file_name: [11](#).
tex_new_line: [78](#).
tex_printf: [78](#), 80.
tex_putc: [78](#).
TEX_string: [30](#), 32, 37, 50, 176, 210.
text_pointer: [24](#), 25, 103, 106, 111, 170, 183, 184, 189, 193, 213.
text_ptr: [25](#), 26, 106, 111, 164, 166, 170, 171, 175, 177, 184, 193, 195, 213, 247.
thin_space: [30](#), 32, 176, 210.
this_section: [216](#), 217, 218, 220.
this_xref: [244](#), 245.
time: [102](#).
tok_field: [186](#), 187, 189, 190.
tok_flag: [106](#), 108, 109, 111, 184, 192, 213.
tok_loc: [112](#), [113](#).
tok_mem: [25](#), 26, [106](#), 108, 186, 187, 192, 200, 213, 247, 249.
tok_mem_end: [25](#), 91, 166, 171, 177.
tok_ptr: [25](#), 26, 91, 92, 94, 108, 164, 166, 170, 171, 177, 179, 184, 193, 213, 247.
tok_start: 24, [25](#), 26, 103, 108, 109, 111, 164, 184, 192, 193, 213, 247, 249.
tok_start_end: [25](#), 166, 177.

- tok_value*: [112](#).
- token**: [24](#), [25](#), [109](#).
- token_pointer**: [24](#), [25](#), [106](#), [111](#), [112](#), [113](#), [186](#), [193](#).
- tolower*: [230](#), [240](#).
- toupper*: [48](#).
- trace*: [30](#), [33](#), [50](#), [66](#).
- tracing*: [50](#), [66](#), [168](#), [169](#), [172](#), [173](#).
- Tracing after...: [173](#).
- Trans*: [103](#), [104](#).
- trans*: [103](#), [104](#), [108](#), [109](#), [112](#), [113](#), [164](#), [167](#), [170](#), [174](#), [175](#), [231](#).
- trans_plus*: [103](#), [104](#), [233](#).
- translate*: [170](#), [183](#), [213](#).
- translit_code*: [30](#), [32](#), [50](#), [66](#), [88](#).
- typedef_like*: [16](#), [28](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [161](#).
- typewriter*: [16](#), [62](#), [242](#).
- ubinop*: [96](#), [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [118](#), [124](#), [127](#), [157](#), [160](#), [161](#), [176](#), [182](#).
- unbucket*: [237](#), [238](#), [239](#), [240](#).
- underline*: [30](#), [32](#), [50](#), [66](#).
- underline_xref*: [113](#), [114](#), [115](#).
- unindexed*: [21](#), [70](#).
- UNKNOWN: [98](#).
- unop*: [97](#), [98](#), [101](#), [102](#), [110](#), [117](#), [160](#), [176](#), [178](#).
- update_terminal*: [14](#), [61](#), [209](#).
- Use @1 in limbo...: [50](#), [66](#).
- verbatim*: [30](#), [32](#), [37](#), [50](#), [57](#), [176](#).
- Verbatim string didn't end: [57](#).
- visible*: [213](#).
- web_file_name*: [11](#).
- web_file_open*: [11](#).
- wildcard*: [16](#), [62](#), [242](#).
- wrap-up*: [3](#), [10](#).
- Writing the index...: [226](#).
- Writing the output file...: [206](#).
- x*: [102](#).
- xisalpha*: [8](#), [40](#).
- xisdigit*: [8](#), [40](#), [48](#), [209](#).
- xislower*: [8](#), [196](#), [242](#).
- xisspace*: [8](#), [40](#), [44](#), [53](#), [79](#), [90](#).
- xisupper*: [8](#), [230](#), [240](#).
- xisxdigit*: [8](#), [48](#).
- xlink*: [18](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [70](#), [75](#), [115](#), [116](#), [200](#), [218](#), [220](#), [223](#), [243](#), [245](#).
- xmem*: [18](#), [19](#), [20](#), [21](#), [22](#), [27](#), [70](#), [75](#), [115](#), [230](#), [243](#), [245](#), [249](#).
- xmem_end*: [19](#), [21](#).
- xref*: [18](#), [20](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [27](#), [70](#), [75](#), [115](#), [116](#), [200](#), [218](#), [220](#), [230](#), [245](#).
- xref_info**: [18](#), [19](#).
- xref_pointer**: [18](#), [19](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [70](#), [73](#), [75](#), [115](#), [116](#), [200](#), [218](#), [220](#), [222](#), [244](#), [245](#).
- xref_ptr*: [18](#), [19](#), [20](#), [21](#), [22](#), [23](#), [116](#), [249](#).
- xref_roman*: [30](#), [32](#), [37](#), [50](#), [62](#), [66](#), [176](#), [210](#).
- xref_switch*: [18](#), [19](#), [20](#), [21](#), [37](#), [50](#), [51](#), [66](#), [69](#), [70](#), [113](#), [115](#).
- xref_typewriter*: [30](#), [32](#), [37](#), [50](#), [62](#), [63](#), [66](#), [176](#), [210](#).
- xref_wildcard*: [30](#), [32](#), [37](#), [50](#), [62](#), [66](#), [176](#), [210](#).
- yes_math*: [108](#), [109](#), [149](#), [150](#), [163](#), [169](#), [171](#), [176](#), [178](#), [182](#).
- You can't do that...: [210](#), [219](#).
- You need an = sign...: [218](#).

- ⟨Append a `TEX` string, without forming a scrap 180⟩ Used in section 176.
- ⟨Append a string or constant 179⟩ Used in section 176.
- ⟨Append the scrap appropriate to `next_control` 176⟩ Used in section 174.
- ⟨Cases for `base` 129⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `binop` 121⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `case_like` 141⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `cast` 122⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `catch_like` 142⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `colcol` 126⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `const_like` 158⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `decl_head` 127⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `decl` 128⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `delete_like` 162⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `do_like` 140⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `else_head` 137⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `else_like` 136⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `exp` 117⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `fn_decl` 132⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `for_like` 156⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `ftemplate` 155⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `function` 133⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `if_clause` 138⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `if_head` 139⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `if_like` 135⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `insert` 148⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `int_like` 124⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `langle` 151⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `lbrace` 134⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `lpar` 118⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `lproc` 146⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `new_exp` 154⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `new_like` 153⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `operator_like` 160⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `prelangle` 149⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `prerangle` 150⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `public_like` 125⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `question` 163⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `raw_int` 159⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `raw_ubin` 157⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `section_scrap` 147⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `semi` 145⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `sizeof_like` 123⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `stmt` 144⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `struct_head` 131⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `struct_like` 130⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `tag` 143⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `template_like` 152⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `typedef_like` 161⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `ubinop` 120⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases for `unop` 119⟩ Used in section 110.
- ⟨Cases involving nonstandard characters 178⟩ Used in section 176.
- ⟨Check for end of comment 93⟩ Used in section 92.

- ⟨ Check if next token is **include** 44 ⟩ Used in section 42.
- ⟨ Check if we're at the end of a preprocessor command 45 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Check that '=' or '==' follows this section name, and emit the scraps to start the section definition 218 ⟩
Used in section 217.
- ⟨ Clear *bal* and **return** 95 ⟩ Used in section 92.
- ⟨ Combine the irreducible scraps that remain 171 ⟩ Used in section 170.
- ⟨ Common code for CWEAVE and CTANGLE 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 ⟩ Used in section 1.
- ⟨ Compress two-symbol operator 46 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Copy a quoted character into the buffer 204 ⟩ Used in section 203.
- ⟨ Copy special things when $c \equiv '@', '\\'$ 94 ⟩ Used in section 92.
- ⟨ Copy the C text into the *buffer* array 203 ⟩ Used in section 201.
- ⟨ Do the first pass of sorting 230 ⟩ Used in section 226.
- ⟨ Emit the scrap for a section name if present 219 ⟩ Used in section 217.
- ⟨ Get a constant 48 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Get a string 49 ⟩ Used in sections 40 and 50.
- ⟨ Get an identifier 47 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Get control code and possible section name 50 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Global variables 17, 19, 25, 31, 37, 41, 43, 58, 68, 73, 77, 97, 104, 108, 168, 187, 191, 207, 216, 227, 229, 233, 235, 244 ⟩
Used in section 1.
- ⟨ If end of name or erroneous control code, **break** 54 ⟩ Used in section 53.
- ⟨ If semi-tracing, show the irreducible scraps 172 ⟩ Used in section 171.
- ⟨ If tracing, print an indication of where we are 173 ⟩ Used in section 170.
- ⟨ Include files 6, 38 ⟩ Used in section 1.
- ⟨ Insert new cross-reference at *q*, not at beginning of list 116 ⟩ Used in section 115.
- ⟨ Invert the cross-reference list at *cur_name*, making *cur_xref* the head 245 ⟩ Used in section 243.
- ⟨ Look ahead for strongest line break, **goto reswitch** 198 ⟩ Used in section 197.
- ⟨ Make sure that there is room for the new scraps, tokens, and texts 177 ⟩ Used in sections 176 and 184.
- ⟨ Make sure the entries *pp* through *pp* + 3 of *cat* are defined 167 ⟩ Used in section 166.
- ⟨ Match a production at *pp*, or increase *pp* if there is no match 110 ⟩ Used in section 166.
- ⟨ Output a control, look ahead in case of line breaks, possibly **goto reswitch** 197 ⟩ Used in section 195.
- ⟨ Output a section name 200 ⟩ Used in section 195.
- ⟨ Output all the section names 248 ⟩ Used in section 226.
- ⟨ Output all the section numbers on the reference list *cur_xref* 223 ⟩ Used in section 222.
- ⟨ Output an identifier 196 ⟩ Used in section 195.
- ⟨ Output index entries for the list at *sort_ptr* 241 ⟩ Used in section 239.
- ⟨ Output saved *indent* or *outdent* tokens 199 ⟩ Used in sections 195 and 198.
- ⟨ Output the code for the beginning of a new section 209 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Output the code for the end of a section 224 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Output the cross-references at *cur_name* 243 ⟩ Used in section 241.
- ⟨ Output the name at *cur_name* 242 ⟩ Used in section 241.
- ⟨ Output the text of the section name 201 ⟩ Used in section 200.
- ⟨ Predeclaration of procedures 2, 34, 39, 55, 59, 62, 64, 74, 83, 91, 114, 181, 194, 205, 212, 221, 225, 237, 246 ⟩ Used in
section 1.
- ⟨ Print a snapshot of the scrap list if debugging 169 ⟩ Used in sections 164 and 165.
- ⟨ Print error messages about unused or undefined section names 76 ⟩ Used in section 60.
- ⟨ Print token *r* in symbolic form 107 ⟩ Used in section 106.
- ⟨ Print warning message, break the line, **return** 85 ⟩ Used in section 84.
- ⟨ Process a format definition 70 ⟩ Used in section 69.
- ⟨ Process simple format in limbo 71 ⟩ Used in section 35.
- ⟨ Put section name into *section_text* 53 ⟩ Used in section 51.
- ⟨ Raise preprocessor flag 42 ⟩ Used in section 40.
- ⟨ Reduce the scraps using the productions until no more rules apply 166 ⟩ Used in section 170.

- ⟨ Replace "@@" by "@" 67 ⟩ Used in sections 63 and 66.
- ⟨ Rest of *trans_plus* union 232 ⟩ Used in section 103.
- ⟨ Scan a verbatim string 57 ⟩ Used in section 50.
- ⟨ Scan the section name and make *cur_section* point to it 51 ⟩ Used in section 50.
- ⟨ Set initial values 20, 26, 32, 52, 80, 82, 98, 105, 188, 234, 236 ⟩ Used in section 3.
- ⟨ Show cross-references to this section 220 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Skip next character, give error if not '@' 202 ⟩ Used in section 201.
- ⟨ Sort and output the index 239 ⟩ Used in section 226.
- ⟨ Special control codes for debugging 33 ⟩ Used in section 32.
- ⟨ Split the list at *sort_ptr* into further lists 240 ⟩ Used in section 239.
- ⟨ Start a format definition 215 ⟩ Used in section 211.
- ⟨ Start a macro definition 214 ⟩ Used in section 211.
- ⟨ Store all the reserved words 28 ⟩ Used in section 3.
- ⟨ Store cross-reference data for the current section 61 ⟩ Used in section 60.
- ⟨ Store cross-references in the C part of a section 72 ⟩ Used in section 61.
- ⟨ Store cross-references in the T_EX part of a section 66 ⟩ Used in section 61.
- ⟨ Store cross-references in the definition part of a section 69 ⟩ Used in section 61.
- ⟨ Tell about changed sections 228 ⟩ Used in section 226.
- ⟨ Translate the C part of the current section 217 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Translate the T_EX part of the current section 210 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Translate the current section 208 ⟩ Used in section 206.
- ⟨ Translate the definition part of the current section 211 ⟩ Used in section 208.
- ⟨ Typedef declarations 18, 24, 103, 186 ⟩ Used in section 1.

The CWEAVE processor

(Version 3.64)

| | Section | Page |
|--|---------|------|
| Introduction | 1 | 110 |
| Data structures exclusive to CWEAVE | 16 | 116 |
| Lexical scanning | 29 | 124 |
| Inputting the next token | 37 | 127 |
| Phase one processing | 58 | 137 |
| Low-level output routines | 77 | 144 |
| Routines that copy T _E X material | 88 | 148 |
| Parsing | 96 | 152 |
| Implementing the productions | 103 | 166 |
| Initializing the scraps | 174 | 196 |
| Output of tokens | 185 | 204 |
| Phase two processing | 205 | 214 |
| Phase three processing | 225 | 221 |
| Index | 250 | 229 |